

# **Linux: Phrasebook**



# Table of Contents

Copyright.....	1
Trademarks.....	1
Warning and Disclaimer.....	1
Bulk Sales.....	1
Dedication.....	2
About the Author.....	2
Acknowledgments.....	4
We Want to Hear from You!.....	6
Reader Services.....	6
Introduction.....	6
Audience for This Book.....	7
Conventions Used in This book.....	7
<b>Part I: Getting Started.....</b>	<b>8</b>
Chapter 1. Things to Know About Your Command Line.....	9
Everything Is a File.....	9
Maximum Filename Lengths.....	10
Names Are Case-Sensitive.....	10
Special Characters to Avoid in Names.....	11
Wildcards and What They Mean.....	12
Conclusion.....	15
Chapter 2. The Basics.....	15
List Files and Folders.....	16
List the Contents of Other Folders.....	16
List Folder Contents Using Wildcards.....	17
View a List of Files in Subfolders.....	18
View a List of Contents in a Single Column.....	18
View Contents As a Comma-Separated List.....	18
View Hidden Files and Folders.....	19
Visually Display a File's Type.....	19
Display Contents in Color.....	20
List Permissions, Ownership, and More.....	21
Reverse the Order Contents are Listed.....	22
Sort Contents by File Extension.....	23
Sort Contents by Date and Time.....	23
Sort Contents by Size.....	24
Express File Sizes in Terms of K, M, and G.....	25
Display the Path of Your Current Directory.....	26
Change to a Different Directory.....	26
Change to Your Home Directory.....	27
Change to Your Previous Directory.....	28
Change a File to the Current Time.....	29
Change a File to Any Desired Time.....	30
Create a New, Empty File.....	31
Create a New Directory.....	32
Create a New Directory and Any Necessary Subdirectories.....	32
Find Out What mkdir Is Doing As It Acts.....	33
Copy Files.....	33
Copy Files Using Wildcards.....	34
Copy Files Verbosely.....	35
Stop Yourself from Copying over Important Files.....	36
Copy Directories.....	36

# Table of Contents

## Part I: Getting Started

Copy Files As Perfect Backups in Another Directory.....	37
Move and Rename Files.....	37
Rename Files and Folders.....	38
Delete Files.....	38
Remove Several Files At Once with Wildcards.....	39
Remove Files Verbosely.....	40
Stop Yourself from Deleting Key Files.....	41
Delete an Empty Directory.....	41
Remove Files and Directories That Aren't Empty.....	42
Delete Troublesome Files.....	43
Become Another User.....	44
Become Another User, with His Environment Variables.....	44
Become root.....	46
Become root, with Its Environment Variables.....	47
Conclusion.....	48
Chapter 3. Learning About Commands.....	49
Find Out About Commands with man.....	50
Search for a Command Based on What It Does.....	50
Quickly Find Out What a Command Does Based on Its Name.....	50
Rebuild man's Database of Commands.....	51
Read a Command's Specific Man Page.....	53
Print Man Pages.....	53
Learn About Commands with info.....	54
Navigate Within info.....	55
Locate the Paths for a Command's Executable, Source Files, and Man Pages.....	56
Read Descriptions of Commands.....	57
Find a Command Based on What It Does.....	58
Find Out Which Version of a Command Will Run.....	59
Conclusion.....	59
Chapter 4. Building Blocks.....	1
Run Several Commands Sequentially.....	1
Run Commands Only If the Previous Ones Succeed.....	1
Run a Command Only If the Previous One Fails.....	2
Plug the Output of a Command into Another Command.....	2
Understand Input/Output Streams.....	3
Use the Output of One Command As Input for Another.....	4
Redirect a Command's Output to a File.....	5
Prevent Overwriting Files When Using Redirection.....	6
Append a Command's Output to a File.....	6
Use a File As Input for a Command.....	7
Conclusion.....	8

## Part II: Working with Files.....8

Chapter 5. Viewing Files.....	9
View Files on stdout.....	9
Concatenate Files to stdout.....	10
Concatenate Files to Another File.....	10
Concatenate Files and Number the Lines.....	11
View Text Files a Screen at a Time.....	12
Search Within Your Pager.....	12
Edit Files Viewed with a Pager.....	12

# Table of Contents

## Part II: Working with Files

View the First 10 Lines of a File.....	13
View the First 10 Lines of Several Files.....	14
View the First Several Lines of a File or Files.....	15
View the First Several Bytes, Kilobytes, or Megabytes of a File.....	15
View the Last 10 Lines of a File.....	16
View the Last 10 Lines of Several Files.....	17
View the Last Several Lines of a File or Files.....	17
View the Constantly Updated Last Lines of a File or Files.....	18
Conclusion.....	18
Chapter 6. Printing and Managing Print Jobs.....	19
List All Available Printers.....	19
Determine Your Default Printer.....	19
Find Out How Your Printers Are Connected.....	20
Get All the Information About Your Printers at Once.....	21
Print Files to the Default Printer.....	22
Print Files to Any Printer.....	23
Print More Than One Copy of a File.....	24
List Print Jobs.....	25
List Print Jobs by Printer.....	27
Cancel the Current Print Job Sent to the Default Printer.....	28
Cancel a Print Job Sent to Any Printer.....	31
Cancel All Print Jobs.....	32
Conclusion.....	34
Chapter 7. Ownerships and Permissions.....	36
Change the Group Owning Files and Directories.....	38
Recursively Change the Group Owning a Directory.....	38
Keep Track of Changes Made to a File's Group with chgrp.....	39
Change the Owner of Files and Directories.....	40
Change the Owner and Group of Files and Directories.....	42
Understand the Basics of Permissions.....	43
Change Permissions on Files and Directories Using Alphabetic Notation.....	43
Change Permissions on Files and Directories Using Numeric Permissions.....	44
Change Permissions Recursively.....	44
Set and Then Clear suid.....	45
Set and Then Clear sgid.....	46
Set and Then Clear the Sticky Bit.....	47
Conclusion.....	48
Chapter 8. Archiving and Compression.....	48
Archive and Compress Files Using zip.....	49
Get the Best Compression Possible with zip.....	50
Password-Protect Compressed Zip Archives.....	50
Unzip Files.....	51
List Files That Will Be Unzipped.....	52
Test Files That Will Be Unzipped.....	53
Archive and Compress Files Using gzip.....	54
Archive and Compress Files Recursively Using gzip.....	55
Get the Best Compression Possible with gzip.....	1
Uncompress Files Compressed with gzip.....	1
Test Files That Will Be Unzipped with gunzip.....	1
Archive and Compress Files Using bzip2.....	2
Get the Best Compression Possible with bzip2.....	3

# Table of Contents

## Part II: Working with Files

Uncompress Files Compressed with bzip2.....	4
Test Files That Will Be Unzipped with bunzip.....	5
Archive Files with tar.....	5
Archive and Compress Files with tar and gzip.....	8
Test Files That Will Be Untarred and Uncompressed.....	9
Untar and Uncompress Files.....	10
Conclusion.....	10

## Part III: Finding Stuff.....11

Chapter 9. Finding Stuff: Easy.....	12
Search a Database of Filenames.....	13
Search a Database of Filenames Without Worrying About Case.....	14
Manage Results Received When Searching a Database of Filenames.....	15
Update the Database Used by locate.....	15
Searching Inside Text Files for Patterns.....	16
The Basics of Searching Inside Text Files for Patterns.....	16
Search Recursively for Text in Files.....	17
Search for Text in Files, Ignoring Case.....	18
Search for Whole Words Only in Files.....	18
Show Line Numbers Where Words Appear in Files.....	20
Search the Output of Other Commands for Specific Words.....	21
See Context for Words Appearing in Files.....	22
Show Lines Where Words Do Not Appear in Files.....	23
List Files Containing Searched-for Words.....	24
Search for Words Inside Search Results.....	25
Conclusion.....	26
Chapter 10. The find Command.....	1
Find Files by Name.....	1
Find Files by Ownership.....	1
Find Files by Group Ownership.....	2
Find Files by File Size.....	2
Find Files by File Type.....	3
Show Results If the Expressions Are True (AND).....	3
Show Results If Either Expression Is True (OR).....	4
Show Results If the Expression Is Not True (NOT).....	4
Execute a Command on Every Found File.....	5
Print Find Results into a File.....	6
Conclusion.....	6

## Part IV: Environment.....6

Chapter 11. Your Shell.....	7
View Your Command-Line History.....	8
Run the Last Command Again.....	9
Run a Previous Command Using Numbers.....	10
Run a Previous Command Using a String.....	11
Display All Command Aliases.....	12
View a Specific Command Alias.....	13
Create a New Temporary Alias.....	13
Create a New Permanent Alias.....	14
Remove an Alias.....	15
Conclusion.....	16

# Table of Contents

## Part IV: Environment

Chapter 12. Monitoring System Resources.....	17
View All Currently Running Processes.....	18
View a Process Tree.....	18
View Processes Owned by a Particular User.....	18
End a Running Process.....	19
View a Dynamically Updated List of Running Processes.....	20
List Open Files.....	20
List a User's Open Files.....	22
List Users for a Particular File.....	23
List Processes for a Particular Program.....	24
Display Information About System RAM.....	24
Show File System Disk Usage.....	25
Report File Space Used by a Directory.....	26
Report Just the Total Space Used for a Directory.....	28
Conclusion.....	28
Chapter 13. Installing Software.....	30
Install Software Packages for RPM-Based Distributions.....	30
Remove Software Packages for RPM-Based Distributions.....	31
Install Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions.....	32
Remove Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions.....	1
Upgrade Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions.....	1
Find Packages Available for Download for RPM-Based Distributions.....	1
Install Software Packages for Debian.....	3
Remove Software Packages for Debian.....	4
Install Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian.....	5
Remove Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian.....	6
Upgrade Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian.....	7
Find Packages Available for Download for Debian.....	8
Clean Up Unneeded Installation Packages for Debian.....	10
Troubleshoot Problems with apt.....	11
Conclusion.....	12

## Part V: Networking.....13

Chapter 14. Connectivity.....	14
View the Status of Your Network Interfaces.....	15
Verify That a Computer Is Running and Accepting Requests.....	17
Trace the Route Packets Take Between Two Hosts.....	17
Perform DNS Lookups.....	17
Configure a Network Interface.....	19
View the Status of Your Wireless Network Interfaces.....	20
Configure a Wireless Network Interface.....	21
Grab a New Address Using DHCP.....	22
Make a Network Connection Active.....	26
Bring a Network Connection Down.....	29
Display Your IP Routing Table.....	30
Change Your IP Routing Table.....	31
Troubleshooting Network Problems.....	31
Conclusion.....	32
Chapter 15. Working on the Network.....	34
Securely Log In to Another Computer.....	34
Securely Log In to Another Machine Without a Password.....	35

# Table of Contents

## Part V: Networking

Securely Transfer Files Between Machines.....	37
Securely Copy Files Between Hosts.....	40
Securely Transfer and Back Up Files.....	41
Download Files Non-interactively.....	41
Download Websites Non-interactively.....	42
Download Sequential Files and Internet Resources.....	42
Conclusion.....	43
Chapter 16. Windows Networking.....	44
Discover the Workgroup's Master Browsers.....	45
Query and Map NetBIOS Names and IP Addresses.....	45
List a Machine's Samba Shares.....	47
Access Samba Resources with an FTP-Like Client.....	47
Mount a Samba Filesystem.....	48
Conclusion.....	48
Index.....	48
Index.....	49
Index.....	49
Index.....	50
Index.....	51
Index.....	51
Index.....	52
Index.....	52
Index.....	53
Index.....	55
Index.....	55
Index.....	55
Index.....	56
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title
Index.....	title



# Part I: Getting Started

[Chapter 1. Things to Know About Your Command Line](#)

[Chapter 2. The Basics](#)

[Chapter 3. Learning About Commands](#)

[Chapter 4. Building Blocks](#)

## Chapter 1. Things to Know About Your Command Line

Before you really dig in to your bash shell, you first need to understand a few things that will help you as you proceed throughout this book. These are some absolutes that you just gotta know, and, trickily, some of them are not obvious at all. But after you understand them, some of the ways in which your shell behaves will start making much more sense.

### Everything Is a File

On a Linux system, everything is a fileeverything, which may seem obvious at first. Of course a text document is a file, and so is an OpenOffice.org document, and don't forget a picture, an MP3, and a video. Of course!

But what about a directory? It's a file, tooa special kind of file that contains information about other files. Disk drives are really big files. Network connections are files. Even running processes are files. It's all files.

To Linux, a file is just a stream of bits and bytes. Linux doesn't care what those bits and bytes form; instead, the programs running on Linux care. To Linux, a text document and a network connection are both files; it's your text editor that knows how to work with the text document, and your Internet applications that recognize the network connection.

Throughout this book I'm going to refer to files. If it's appropriate, feel free to read that as "files and directories and subdirectories and everything else on the system." In particular, many of the commands I'll cover work equally well on documents and directories, so feel free to try out the examples on both.

### Maximum Filename Lengths

People who can look back to using MS-DOS (shudder!) remember that filenames could be no longer than eight characters, plus a three-letter extension, giving you incredibly descriptive names such as `MSRSUME1.DOC`. Pre-OS X Macs, on the other hand, extended that limit to 31 characters, which might sound long but could still produce some odd-looking names.

Linux (and Unix) filenames can be up to 255 characters in length. That's an outrageous length for a filename, and if you're getting anywhere even close to that, your picture should appear next to verbose in the dictionary. You're given up to 255 characters, so feel free to be descriptive and accurate, but don't go nuts.

In fact, it's a good idea to keep filenames below 80 characters because that's the width of your average terminal and your filenames will appear on one line without wrapping. But that's just advice, not a requirement. The freedom to describe a file in 200+ characters is yours; just use it wisely.

## Names Are Case-Sensitive

Unlike Windows and Mac OS machines, Linux boxes are case-sensitive when it comes to filenames. You could find the three following files in the same directory on a computer running Linux:

- `bookstobuy.txt`
- `BooksToBuy.txt`
- `BoOkStObUy.txt`

To the Linux filesystem, those are three completely different files. If you were on Windows or Mac OS, however, you would be asked to rename or cancel your attempt to add `BooksToBuy.txt` to a directory that already contained `bookstobuy.txt`.

Case-sensitivity also means that commands and filenames must be entered exactly to match their real command names or filenames. If you want to delete files by running `rm`, you can't type in `RM` or `Rm` or `rM`. `rm` is it. And if you want to delete `bookstobuy.txt` and you instead enter `rm BooksToBuy.txt`, you just removed the wrong file or no file at all.

The lesson is twofold: Linux forces you to be precise, but precision is a good thing. At the same time, you're given a degree of flexibility that you won't find in other operating systems. That combination of required precision and flexibility is one of the things that makes Linux fun to use, yet understandably a bit confusing for new users.

## Special Characters to Avoid in Names

Every operating system has certain no-no's when it comes to the characters you can use when naming files and directories. If you use Mac OS, the colon (:) isn't allowed; Windows users, on the other hand, can't use the backslash (\). Linux has its verboten characters as well. Before looking at those, however, here are the characters that are always safe: numbers, letters (either uppercase or lowercase), dots (.), and underscores (\_). Other items on your keyboard might work perfectly, others might work but present complications due to the fact that your shell will try to interpret them in various ways, and some won't work at all.

`/` is never an option because that particular character is used to separate directories and files. Let's say you want to keep a file listing books you want to buy. You somehow manage to name the file `books/to_buy.txt` (with a forward slash) to distinguish it from `books/on_loan.txt` and `books/lost.txt`. Now when you try to refer to your file at `/home/scott/documents/books/to_buy.txt`, your command isn't going to work because your shell thinks that a `books` directory is inside the `documents` directory, but it doesn't exist.

Instead of a forward slash, use an underscore (as I did for the `to_buy` part of the filename), or cram the words together (as in `booksToBuy.txt` or `BooksToBuy.txt`).

You could use a dash, forming `books-to-buy.txt`, but I find that underscores work nicely as word separators while remaining more unobtrusive than dashes. If you do use a dash, though, do not place it at the beginning of a filename, as in `-books_to_buy.txt`, or after a space, as in `books - to buy`. As you're going to see later, if you're using a command and you want to invoke special options for that command, you preface the options with dashes. As you're going to see in [Chapter 2, "The Basics,"](#) the `rm` command deletes files, but if you tried typing `rm -books_to_buy.txt`, your shell would complain with the following error message:

```
rm: invalid option -- b
```

You can use spaces if you'd like, forming `books to buy.txt`, but you have to let your shell know that those spaces are part of the filename. Your shell usually sees a space as a separator between arguments. Attempts to delete `books to buy.txt` confuses the shell, as it would try to delete a file named `books`, then one named `to`, and finally one named `buy.txt`. Ultimately, you won't delete `books to buy.txt`, and you might accidentally delete files you didn't want to remove.

So how do you work with spaces in filenames? Or the `*` and `?` characters, which you'll learn more about in the next section? Or the `'` and `"` characters, which also have special meanings in your shell? You have several choices. Avoid using them, if at all possible. Or escape them by placing a `\` in front of the characters, which tells the shell that it should ignore their special usage and treat them as simple characters. It can grow tiresome, however, making sure that `\` is in its proper place all the time:

```
$ rm Why\ don\ 't\ I\ name\ files\ with\ \*\?.txt
```

Yuck. A simpler method that's a bit less onerous is to surround the filename with quotation marks, which function similarly to the `\`:

```
$ rm "Why don't I name files with *?.txt"
```

This will work, but it's still a pain to have to use quotation marks all the time. A better solution is just not to use these characters in the first place. [Table 1.1](#) has some characters and what to do about them.

**Table 1.1. How to Use Special Characters in Filenames**

Character	Advice
/	Never use. Cannot be escaped.
\	Must be escaped.
*	Avoid.
?	Never use at beginning of file or directory name.

[ ]

Must be  
escaped.

{ }

Avoid.  
Must be  
escaped.

\*

Avoid.  
Must be  
escaped.

?

Avoid.  
Must be  
escaped.

'

Avoid.  
Must be  
escaped.

"

Avoid.  
Must be  
escaped.  
Avoid.

.

## Wildcards and What They Mean

Imagine that you have the following files 12 pictures and a text file in a directory on your computer:

```
libby1.jpg
libby2.jpg
libby3.jpg
libby4.jpg
libby5.jpg
libby6.jpg
libby7.jpg
libby8.jpg
libby9.jpg
libby10.jpg
libby11.jpg
libby12.jpg
libby1.txt
```

You want to delete these files using the `rm` command (covered in [Chapter 2](#)) on your command line. Removing them one at a time would be tedious and kind of silly. After all, one of the reasons to use computers is to automate and simplify boring tasks. This is a job for wildcards, which allow you to specify more than one file at a time by matching characters.

There are three wildcards: `*` (asterisk), `?` (question mark), and `[ ]` (square brackets). Let's take each one in order.

The `*` matches any character zero or more times. [Table 1.2](#) has some uses of the `*` and what they would match.

**Table 1.2. The Wildcard \* and What It Matches**

Command	Matches
<code>rm libby1*.jpg</code>	libby10.jpg through libby12.jpg, as well as libby1.txt
<code>rm libby*.jpg</code>	libby1.jpg through libby12.jpg, but not libby1.txt
<code>rm *txt</code>	libby1.txt, but not libby1.jpg through libby12.jpg
<code>rm libby*</code>	libby1.jpg through libby12.jpg, and libby1.txt
<code>rm *</code>	All files in the directory

The `?` matches a single character. [Table 1.3](#) has some uses of the `?` and what they would match.

**Table 1.3. The Wildcard ? and What It Matches**

Command	Matches
<code>rm libby1?.jpg</code>	libby10.jpg through libby12.jpg, but not libby1.txt
<code>rm libby?.jpg</code>	libby1.jpg through libby9.jpg, but not libby10.jpg
<code>rm libby?.*</code>	libby1.jpg through libby9.jpg, as well as libby1.txt

The `[ ]` match either a set of single characters (`[12]`, for instance) or a range of characters separated by a hyphen (such as `[1-3]`). [Table 1.4](#) has some uses of the `[ ]` and what they would match.

**Table 1.4. The Wildcard [ ] and What It Matches**

Command	Matches
<code>rm libby1[12].jpg</code>	libby11.jpg and libby12.jpg, but not libby10.jpg
<code>rm libby1[0-2].jpg</code>	

```
libby10.jpg through libby12.jpg, but not libby1.jpg  
  
rm libby[6-8].jpg  
  
libby6.jpg through libby8.jpg, but nothing else
```

You'll be using wildcards all through this book, so it's good to introduce them now. They make dealing with files on the command line that much easier, and you're going to find them extremely helpful.

## Conclusion

You've learned the stuff about Linux that might not be obvious to the new user, but that will come in handy as you begin using your shell and its commands. The details in this chapter will save you headaches as you start applying the materials in later chapters. Wondering why you can't copy a directory with a space in it, how to delete 1,000 files at one time, or why you can't run `RM bookstobuy.txt`? Those are not fun questions. With a little up-front knowledge, you can avoid the common mistakes that have plagued so many others.

With that out of the way, it's time to jump in and start learning commands. Turn the page, and let's go!

## Chapter 2. The Basics

This chapter introduces the basic commands you'll find yourself using several times every day. Think of these as the hammer, screwdriver, and pliers that a carpenter keeps in the top of his toolbox. After you learn these commands, you can start controlling your shell and finding out all sorts of interesting things about your files, folders, data, and environment.

### List Files and Folders

#### **ls**

The `ls` command is probably the one that people find themselves using the most. After all, before you can manipulate and use files in a directory, you first have to know what files are available. That's where `ls` comes in, as it lists the files and subdirectories found in a directory.

#### Note

The `ls` command might sound simple—just show me the files!—but there are a surprising number of permutations to this amazingly pliable command, as you'll see.

Typing `ls` lists the contents of the directory in which you're currently located. When you first log in to your shell, you'll find yourself in your home directory. Enter `ls`, and you might see something like the following:

```
$ ls
alias Desktop  iso  pictures program_files todo
bin  documents music podcasts src          videos
```

## List the Contents of Other Folders

### `ls music`

You don't have to be in a directory to find out what's in it. Let's say that you're in your home directory, but you want to find out what's in the music directory. Simply type the `ls` command, followed by the folder whose contents you want to view, and you'll see this:

```
$ ls music
Buddy_Holly  Clash  Donald_Fagen  new
```

In the previous example, a relative path is used, but absolute paths work just as well.

```
$ ls /home/scott/music
Buddy_Holly  Clash  Donald_Fagen  new
```

The ability to specify relative or absolute paths can be incredibly handy when you don't feel like moving all over your file system every time you want to view a list of the contents of a directory. Not sure if you still have that video of Tiger Woods sinking that incredible putt? Try this (~ is like an alias meaning your home directory):

```
$ ls ~/videos
Ubuntu_Talk.mpeg          nerdtv_1_andy_hertzfeld
airhorn_surprise.wmv      nerdtv_2_max_levchin
apple_navigator.mov       nerdtv_3_bill_joy
b-ball-e-mail.mov         RPG_Nerds.mpeg
carwreck.mpg              tiger_woods_just_did_it.wmv
```

Yes, there it is: `tiger_woods_just_did_it.wmv`.

## List Folder Contents Using Wildcards

```
ls ~/videos/*.wmv
```

You just learned how to find a file in a directory full of files, but there's a faster method. If you knew that the video of Tiger Woods you're looking for was in Windows Media format (Boo! Hiss!) and therefore ended with `.wmv`, you could use a wildcard to show just the files that end with that particular extension.

```
$ ls ~/videos
Ubuntu_Talk.mpeg          nerdtv_1_andy_hertzfeld
airhorn_surprise.wmv      nerdtv_2_max_levchin
apple_navigator.mov       nerdtv_3_bill_joy
b-ball-e-mail.mov         RPG_Nerds.mpeg
carwreck.mpg              tiger_woods_just_did_it.wmv
$ ls ~/videos/*.wmv
airhorn_surprise.wmv      tiger_woods_just_did_it.wmv
```

There's another faster method, also involving wildcards: Look just for files that contain the word `tiger`.

```
$ ls ~/videos/*tiger*
tiger_woods_just_did_it.wmv
```

## View a List of Files in Subfolders

```
ls -R
```

You can also view the contents of several subdirectories with one command. Say you're at a Linux Users Group (LUG) meeting and installations are occurring around you fast and furious. "Hey," someone hollers out, "does anyone have an ISO image of the new Kubuntu that I can use?" You think you downloaded that a few days ago, so to be sure, you run the following command (instead of `ls -R`, you can have also used `ls --recursive`):

```
$ ls -R ~/iso
iso:
debian-31r0a-i386-netinst.iso knoppix ubuntu

iso/knoppix:
KNOPPIX_V4.0.2CD.iso  KNOPPIX_V4.0.2DVD.iso

iso/ubuntu:
kubuntu-5.10-install.iso  ubuntu-5.10-install.iso
kubuntu-5.10-live.iso     ubuntu-5.10-live.iso
```

There it is, in `~/iso/ubuntu: kubuntu-5.10-install-i386.iso`. The `-R` option traverses the `iso` directory recursively, showing you the contents of the main `iso` directory and every subdirectory as well. Each folder is introduced with its path relative to the directory in which you started followed by a colon, and then the items in that folder are listed. Keep in mind that the recursive option becomes less useful when you have many items in many subdirectories, as the listing goes on for screen after screen, making it hard to find the particular item for which you're looking. Of course, if all you want to do is verify that there are many files and folders in a directory, it's useful just to see everything stream by, but that won't happen very often.



## View a List of Contents in a Single Column

### **ls -l**

So far, you've just been working with the default outputs of `ls`. Notice that `ls` prints the contents of the directory in alphabetical columns, with a minimum of two spaces between each column for readability. But what if you want to see the contents in a different manner?

If multiple columns aren't your thing, you can instead view the results of the `ls` command as a single column using, logically enough, `ls -l` (or `ls --format=single-column`).

```
$ ls -l ~/
bin
Desktop
documents
iso
music
pictures
src
videos
```

This listing can get out of hand if you have an enormous number of items in a directory, and more so if you use the recursive option as well, as in `ls -lR ~/`. Be prepared to press `Ctrl+c` to cancel the command if a list is streaming down your terminal with no end in sight.

## View Contents As a Comma-Separated List

### **ls -m**

Another option for those who can't stand columns of any form, whether it's one or many, is the `-m` option (or `--format=commas`).

```
$ ls -m ~/
bin, Desktop, docs, iso, music, pix, src, videos
```

Think of the `m` in `-m` as a mnemonic for comma, and it is easier to remember the option. Of course, this option is also useful if you're writing a script and need the contents of a directory in a comma-separated list, but that's a more advanced use of a valuable option.

## View Hidden Files and Folders

### **ls -a**

Up to this point, you've been viewing the visible files in directories, but don't forget that many directories contain hidden files in them as well. Your `home` directory, for instance, is just bursting with hidden files and folders, all made invisible by the placement of a `.` at the beginning of their names. If you want to view these hidden elements, just use the `-a` option (or `--all`).

```
$ ls -a ~/
.          .gimp-2.2      .openoffice.org1.9.95
..         .gksu.lock  .openoffice.org1.9
.3ddesktop .glade2        .openoffice.org2
.abbrev_defs .gnome         .opera

.adobe     .gnome2_private pictures
```

You should know several things about this listing. First, `ls -a` (the `a` stands for all) displays both hidden and unhidden items, so you see both `.gnome` and `pictures`. Second, you'll always see the `.` and `..` because `.` refers to the current directory, while `..` points to the directory above this one, the parent directory. These two hidden files exist in every single folder on your system, and you can't get rid of them. Expect to see them every time you use the `-a` option. Finally, depending on the directory, the `-a` option can reveal a great number of hidden items of which you weren't aware.

## Visually Display a File's Type

### **ls -F**

The `ls` command doesn't tell you much about an item in a directory besides its name. By itself, it's hard to tell if an item is a file, a directory, or something else. An easy way to solve this problem and make `ls` really informative is to use the `-F` option (or `--classify`).

```
$ ls -F ~/bin
adblock_filters.txt  fixm3u*  pix2tn.pl*
addext*             flash.xml*  pop_login*
address_book.csv    getip*      procmail/
address_book.sxc    homesize*
programs_kill_artsd*
address_book.xls    html2text.py*
programs_usual*
```

This tells you quite a bit. An `*` or asterisk after a file means that it is executable, while a `/` or forward slash indicates a directory. If the filename lacks any sort of appendage at all, it's just a regular ol' file. Other possible endings are shown in [Table 2.1](#).

Table 2.1. Symbols and File Types

Character	Meaning
*	Executable
/	Directory
@	Symbolic link
	FIFO
=	Socket
.	

## Display Contents in Color

### ls --color

In addition to the symbols that are appended to files and folders when you use the `-F` option, you can also ask your shell to display things in color, which gives an additional way to classify items and tell them apart. Many Linux installs come with colors already enabled for shells, but if yours does not, just use the `--color` option.

```
$ ls --color
adblock_filters.txt  fixm3u      pix2tn.pl
addext              flash.xml   pop_login
address_book.csv    getip       procmail
```

In this setup, executable files are green, folders are blue, and normal files are black (which is the default color for text in my shell). [Table 2.2](#) gives you the full list of common color associations (but keep in mind that these colors may vary on your particular distro).

Table 2.2. Colors and File Types

Color	Meaning
Default shell text color	Regular file
Green	Executable
Blue	Directory
Magenta	Symbolic link
Yellow	FIFO
Magenta	Socket
Red	Archive (.tar, .zip, .deb, .rpm)
Magenta	Images (.jpg, .gif, .png, .tiff)
Magenta	Audio (.mp3, .ogg, .wav)

### Tip

Want to see what colors are mapped to the various kinds of files on your system? Enter `dircolors --print-database`, and then read the results carefully. You can also use the `dircolors` command to change those colors as well.

With the combination of `--color` and `-F`, you can see at a glance what kinds of files you're working with in a directory. Now we're cookin' with gas!

```
$ ls -F --color
adblock_filters.txt    fixm3u*      pix2tn.pl*
addext*               flash.xml*   pop_login*
address_book.csv      getip*       procmail/
```

## List Permissions, Ownership, and More

**ls -l**

You've now learned how to format the results of `ls` to tell you more about the contents of directories, but what about the actual contents themselves? How can you learn more about the files and folders, such as their size, their owners, and who can do what with them? For that information, you need to use the `-l` option (or `--format=long`).

```
$ ls -l ~/bin
total 2951
-rw-r--r--  1 scott scott 15058 2005-10-03 18:49  adblock_filters.txt
-rwxr-xr--  1 scott root   33 2005-04-19 09:45  addext

-rwxr--r--  1 scott scott  245 2005-10-15 22:38  backup

drwxr-xr-x  9 scott scott  1080 2005-09-22 14:42  bin_on_bacon
-rw-r--r--  1 scott scott 237641 2005-10-14 13:50  calendar.ics

-rwxr-xr--   1 scott root   190 2005-04-19 09:45  convertsize
drwxr-xr-x  2 scott scott   48 2005-04-19 09:45  credentials
```

The `-l` option stands for long, and as you can see, it provides a wealth of data about the files found in a directory. Let's move from right to left and discuss what you see.

On the farthest right is the easiest item: The name of the listed item. Want `ls` to display more about it? Then add the `-F` option to `-l`, like this: `ls -lF`. Color is easily available as well, with `ls -lF --color`.

Moving left, you next see a date and time. This is the time that the file was last modified, including the date (in year-month-day format) and then the time (in 24-hour military time).

Farther left is a number that indicates the size of the item, in bytes. This is a bit tricky with folders for instance, the previous readout says that `bin_on_bacon` is 1080 bytes, or just a little more than one kilobyte, yet it contains 887KB of content inside it. The `credentials` directory,

according to `ls -l`, is 48 bytes, but contains nothing inside it whatsoever! What is happening?

Remember in [Chapter 1](#), "Things to Know About Your Command Line," when you learned that directories are just special files that contain a list of their contents? In this case, the contents of `credentials` consists of nothing more than the `..` that all directories have to refer to their parent, so it's a paltry 48 bytes, while `bin_on_bacon` contains information about more than 30 items, bringing its size up to 1080 bytes.

The next two columns to the left indicate, respectively, the file's owner and its group. As you can see in the previous listing, almost every file is owned by the user `scott` and the group `scott`, except for `addext` and `convertsize`, which are owned by the user `scott` and the group `root`.

#### Note

Those permissions need to be changed, which you'll learn how to do in [Chapter 7](#), "Ownerships and Permissions" (hint: the commands are `chown` and `chgrp`).

The next to last column as you move left contains a number. If you're examining a file, this number tells you how many hard links exist for that file; if it's a directory, it refers to the number of items it contains.

#### Tip

For more information about hard (and soft) links, see [www.granneman.com/techinfo/linux/thelinuxenvironment/softandhardlinks.htm](http://www.granneman.com/techinfo/linux/thelinuxenvironment/softandhardlinks.htm), or search Google for linux hard links.

And now you reach the final item on the left: The actual permissions for each file and directory. This might seem like some arcane code, but it's actually very understandable with just a little knowledge. There are 10 items, divided (although it doesn't look that way) into 4 groups. The first group consists of the first character; the second group contains characters 2 through 4; the third consists of characters 5 through 7; and the fourth and final group is made up of characters 8 through 10. For instance, here's how the permissions for the `credentials` directory would be split up: `d| rwx| r-x| r-x`.

That first group tells you what kind of item it is. You've already seen that `-F` and `--color` do this in different ways, but so does `-l`. A `d` indicates that `credentials` is a directory, while a `-` in that first position indicates a file. (Even if the file is executable, `ls -l` still uses just a `-`, which means that `-F` and `--color` here give you more information.) There are, of course, other options that you might see in that first position, as detailed in [Table 2.3](#).

**Table 2.3. Permission Characters and File Types**

Character	Meaning
-	Regular file
-	Executable
d	Directory

l	Symbolic link
s	Socket
b	Block device
c	Character device
p	Named pipe

### Tip

To view a list of files that shows at least one of almost everything listed in this table, try `ls -l /dev`.

The next nine characters making up groups two, three, and four stand for, respectively, the permissions given to the file's owner, the file's group, and all the other users on the system. In the case of `addext`, shown previously, its permissions are `rwxr-xr--`, which means that the owner `scott` has `rw`x, the group (in this case, also `scott`) has `r-x`, and the other users on the box have `r--`. What's that mean?

In each case, `r` means "yes, read is allowed"; `w` means "yes, write is allowed" (with "write" meaning both changing and deleting); and `x` means "yes, execute is allowed." A `-` means "no, do not allow this action." If that `-` is located where an `r` would otherwise show itself, that means "no, read is not allowed." The same holds true for both `w` and `x`.

Looking at `addext` and its permissions of `rwxr-xr--`, it's suddenly clear that the owner (`scott`) can read, write, and execute the file; the members of the group (`root`) can read and execute the file, but not write to it; and everyone else on the machine (often called the "world") can read the file but cannot write to it or run it as a program.

Now that you understand what permissions mean, you'll start to notice that certain combinations seem to appear constantly. For instance, it's common to see `rw-r--r--` for many files, which means that the owner can both read and write to the file, but both the group and world can only read the file. For programs, you'll often see `rwxr-xr-x`, which allows everyone on the computer to read and run the program, but restricts changing the file to its owner.

Directories, however, are a bit different. The permissions of `r`, `w`, and `x` are pretty clear for a file: You can read the file, write (or change) it, or execute it. But how do you execute a directory?

Let's start with the easy one: `r`. In the case of a directory, `r` means that the user can list the contents of the directory with the `ls` command. A `w` indicates that users can add more files into the directory, rename files that are already there, or delete files that are no longer needed. That brings us to `x`, which corresponds to the capability to access a directory in order to run commands that access and use files in that directory, or to access subdirectories inside that directory.

As you can see, `-l` is incredibly powerful all by itself, but it becomes even more useful when combined with other options. You've already learned about `-a`, which shows all files in a directory, so now it should be obvious what `-la` would do (or `--format=long --all`).

```
$ la -la ~/
drwxr-xr-x    2 scott scott    200 2005-07-28 01:31    alias
drwx-----    2 root  root     72 2005-09-16 19:14    .aptitude
```

```
-rw-r--r--      1 scott scott      1026 2005-09-25 00:11      .audacity
drwxr-xr-x     10 scott scott        592 2005-10-18 11:22      .Azureus
-rw-----      1 scott scott      8800 2005-10-18 19:55      .bash_history
```

### Note

From this point forward in this chapter, if `scott` is the owner and group for a file, I will remove that data from the listing.

## Reverse the Order Contents are Listed

### **ls -r**

If you don't like the default alphabetical order that `-l` uses, you can reverse it by adding `-r` (or `--reverse`).

```
$ ls -lar ~/

-rw-----  8800 2005-10-18 19:55 .bash_history

drwxr-xr-x   592 2005-10-18 11:22 .Azureus
-rw-r--r--  1026 2005-09-25 00:11 .audacity
drwx-----   72 2005-09-16 19:14 .aptitude
drwxr-xr-x   200 2005-07-28 01:31 alias
```

### Note

Keep in mind that this is `-r`, not `-R`. `-r` means reverse, but `-R` means recursive.

When you use `-l`, the output is sorted alphabetically based on the name of the files and folders; the addition of `-r` reverses the output, but it is still based on the filename. Keep in mind that you can add `-r` virtually any time you use `ls` if you want to reverse the default output of the command and options you're inputting.

## Sort Contents by File Extension

### **ls -X**

The name of a file is not the only thing you can use for alphabetical sorting. You can also sort alphabetically by the file extension. In other words, you can tell `ls` to group all the files ending with `.doc` together,

followed by files ending with `.jpg`, and finally finishing with files ending with `.txt`. Use the `-X` option (or `--sort=extension`); if you want to reverse the sort, add the `-r` option (or `--reverse`).

```
$ ls -lX ~/src
drwxr-xr-x      320 2005-10-06 22:35 backups
drwxr-xr-x     1336 2005-09-18 15:01 fonts
-rw-r--r-- 2983001 2005-06-20 02:15 install.tar.gz
-rw-r--r-- 6683923 2005-09-24 22:41 DuckDoom.zip
```

Folders go first in the list (after all, they have no file extension), followed by the files that do possess an extension. Pay particular attention to `installdata.tar.gz`; it has two extensions, but the final one, the `.gz`, is what is used by `ls`.

## Sort Contents by Date and Time

**`ls -t`**

Letters are great, but sometimes you need to sort a directory's contents by date and time. To do so, use `-t` (or `--sort=time`) along with `-l`; to reverse the sort, use `-tr` (or `--sort=time --reverse`) along with `-l`.

```
$ ls -latr ~/
-rw----- 8800 2005-10-18 19:55 .bash_history
drwx----- 368 2005-10-18 23:12 .gnupg
drwxr-xr-x 2760 2005-10-18 23:14 bin
drwx----- 168 2005-10-19 00:13 .Skype
```

All of these items except the last one were modified on the same day; the last one would have been first if you weren't using the `-r` option and thereby reversing the results.

### Note

Notice that you're using four options at one time in the previous command: `-latr`. You could have instead used `-l -a -t -r`, but who wants to type all of those hyphens? It's quicker and easier to just combine them all into one giant option. The long version of the options (those that start with two hyphens and consist of a word or two), however, cannot be combined and have to be entered separately, as in `-la --sort=time --reverse`.

## Sort Contents by Size



## ls -S

You can also sort by size instead of alphabetically by filename or extension, or by date and time. To sort by size, use `-S` (or `--sort=size`).

```
$ ls -laS ~/
-rw-r--r-- 109587 2005-10-19 11:53 .xsession-errors
-rw-----  40122 2005-04-20 11:00 .nessusrc
-rwxr--r--  15465 2005-10-12 15:45 .vimrc
-rw-----   8757 2005-10-19 08:43 .bash_history
```

When you sort by size, the largest items come first. To sort in reverse, with the smallest at the top, just use `-r`.

## Express File Sizes in Terms of K, M, and G

### ls -h

In the previous section, the 15465 on `.vimrc`'s line means that the file is about 15KB, but it's not always convenient to mentally translate bytes into the equivalent kilobytes, megabytes, or gigabytes. Most of the time, it's more convenient to use the `-h` option (or `--human-readable`), which makes things easier to understand.

```
$ ls -laSh ~/
-rw-r--r-- 100K 2005-10-19 11:44 .xsession-errors
-rw-----  40K 2005-04-20 11:00 .nessusrc
-rwxr--r--  16K 2005-10-12 15:45 .vimrc
-rw-----  8.6K 2005-10-19 08:43 .bash_history
```

In this example, you see K for kilobytes; if the files were big enough, you'd see M for megabytes or even G for gigabytes. Some of you might be wondering how 40122 bytes for `.nessusrc` became 40K when you used `-h`. Remember that 1024 bytes make up a kilobyte, so when you divide 40122 by 1024, you get 39.1816406 kilobytes, which `ls -h` rounds up to 40K. A megabyte is actually 1,048,576 bytes, and a gigabyte is 1,073,741,824 bytes, so a similar sort of rounding takes place with those as well.

### Note

In my `~/ .bashrc` file, I have the following aliases defined, which have served me well for years. Use what you've learned in this section to extend these examples and create aliases that exactly meet your needs (for more on aliases, see [Chapter 11](#), "Your Shell").

```
alias l= 'ls -F'
alias ll= 'ls -lF'
alias la= 'ls -aF'
alias ll= 'ls -laFh'
alias ls= 'ls -F'
```

## Display the Path of Your Current Directory

### **pwd**

Of course, while you're listing the contents of directories hither and yon, you might find yourself confused about just where you are in the file system. How can you tell in which directory you're currently working? The answer is the `pwd` command, which stands for print working directory.

### Note

The word print in print working directory means "print to the screen," not "send to printer."

The `pwd` command displays the full, absolute path of the current, or working, directory. It's not something you'll use all the time, but it can be incredibly handy when you get a bit discombobulated.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/music/new
```

## Change to a Different Directory

### **cd**

It's possible to list the contents of any directory simply by specifying its path, but often you actually want to move into a new directory. That's where the `cd` command comes in, another one that is almost constantly used by shell aficionados.

The `cd` command is simple to use: Just enter `cd`, followed by the directory into which you want to move. You can use a relative path, based on where you are currently `cd src` or `cd ../..` or you can use an absolute path, such as `cd /tmp` or `cd /home/scott/bin`.

## Change to Your Home Directory

### **cd ~**

You should know about a few nice shortcuts for `cd`. No matter where you are, just enter a simple `cd`, and you'll immediately be whisked back to your home directory. This is a fantastic timesaver, one that you'll use all the time. Or, if you'd like, you can use `cd ~` because the `~` is like a shortcut meaning "my home

directory."

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/music
$ cd ~
$ pwd
/home/scott
```

## Change to Your Previous Directory

**cd -**

Another interesting possibility is `cd -`, which takes you back to your previous directory and then runs the `pwd` command for you, printing your new (or is it old?) location. You can see it in action in this example.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ cd music/new
$ pwd
/home/scott/music/new
$ cd -
/home/scott
```

Using `cd -` can be useful when you want to jump into a directory, perform some action there, and then jump back to your original directory. The additional printing to the screen of the information provided by `pwd` is just icing on the cake to make sure you're where you want to be.

## Change a File to the Current Time

**touch**

The `touch` command isn't one you'll find yourself using constantly, but you'll need it as you proceed through this book, so it's a good one to cover now. Interestingly, the main reason for the existence of `touch` to update the access and modification times of a file isn't the main reason you'll be using the command. Instead, you're going to rely on its secondary purpose that undoubtedly gets more use than the primary purpose!

Note

You can only use the `touch` command on a file and change the times if you have write permission for that file. Otherwise, `touch` fails.

To simultaneously update both the access and modification times for a file (or folder), just run the basic `touch` command.

```
$ ls -l ~/
drwxr-xr-x      848 2005-10-19 11:36 src
drwxr-xr-x     1664 2005-10-18 12:07 todo
drwxr-xr-x      632 2005-10-18 12:25 videos
-rw-r--r--      239 2005-09-10 23:12 wireless.log
$ touch wireless.log
$ ls -l ~/
drwxr-xr-x      848 2005-10-19 11:36 src
drwxr-xr-x     1664 2005-10-18 12:07 todo
drwxr-xr-x      632 2005-10-18 12:25 videos
-rw-r--r--      239 2005-10-19 14:00 wireless.log
```

Thanks to `touch`, both the modification time and the access time for the `wireless.log` file have changed, although `ls -l` only shows the modification time. The file hadn't been used in more than a month, but `touch` now updates it, making it look like it was just ... touched.

You can be more specific, if you'd like. If you want to change just the access time, use the `-a` option (or `--time=access`); to alter the modification time only, use `-m` (or `--time=modify`).

## Change a File to Any Desired Time

### `touch -t`

Keep in mind that you aren't constrained to the current date and time. Instead, you can pick whatever date and time you'd like, as long as you use this option and pattern: `-t [[CC]YY]MMDDhhmm[.ss]`. The pattern is explained in [Table 2.4](#).

**Table 2.4. Patterns for Changing a File's Times**

Characters	Meaning
CC	First two characters of a four-digit year
YY	Two-digit year: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If 0068, assumes that first two digits are 20</li><li>• If 6999, assumes that first two digits are 19</li><li>• If nothing,</li></ul>

	assumes current year
MM	Month (0112)
DD	Day (0131)
hh	Hour (0123)
mm	Minute (0059)
ss	Second (0059)

It's very important that you include the zeroes if the number you want to use isn't normally two digits or your pattern won't work. Here are a few examples of `touch` with the `-t` option in action to help get you started.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 239 2005-10-19 14:00 wireless.log
$ touch -t 197002160701 wireless.log
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 239 1970-02-16 07:01 wireless.log
$ touch -t 9212310000 wireless.log
$ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 239 1992-12-31 00:00 wireless.log
$ touch -t 3405170234 wireless.log
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 239 2034-05-17 02:34 wireless.log
$ touch -t 10191703 wireless.log
$ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 239 2005-10-19 17:03 wireless.log
```

First you establish that the current date and time for `wireless.log` is 2005-10-19 14:00. Then you go back in time some 35 years, to 1970-02-16 07:01, and then forward a little more than 20 years to 1992-12-31 00:00, and then leap way into the future to 2034-05-17 02:34, when Linux computers will rule the world and humans will live in peace and open-source prosperity, and then finish back in our day and time.

You should draw a couple of lessons from this demonstration. You go back more than three decades by specifying the complete four-digit year (1970), the month (02), the day (16), the hour (07), and the minute (01). You don't need to specify seconds. After that, you never specify a four-digit year again. 92 in 9212310000 is within the range of 6999, so `touch` assumes you mean 19 as the base century, while 34 in 3405170234 lies between 00 and 68, so 20 is used as the base. The last time `touch` is used, a year isn't specified at all, just a month (10), a day (19), an hour (17), and minutes (03), so `touch` knows you mean the current year, 2005. By understanding how to manipulate `touch`, you can change the date stamps of files when necessary.

## Create a New, Empty File

### `touch`

But that's not the main reason many people use `touch`. The command has an interesting effect if you try to use the `touch` command on a file that doesn't exist: It creates an empty file using the name you specified.

```
$ ls -l ~/
drwxr-xr-x  848 2005-10-19 11:36 src
drwxr-xr-x  632 2005-10-18 12:25 videos

$ touch test.txt
$ ls -l ~/
drwxr-xr-x  848 2005-10-19 11:36 src
-rw-r--r--    0 2005-10-19 23:41 test.txt
drwxr-xr-x  632 2005-10-18 12:25 videos
```

Why would you use `touch` in this way? Let's say you want to create a file now, and then fill it with content later. Or you need to create several files to perform tests on them as you're playing with a new command you've discovered. Both of those are great reasons, and you'll find more as you start learning more about your shell.

## Create a New Directory

### **mkdir**

The `touch` command creates empty files, but how do you bring a new folder into existence? With the `mkdir` command, that's how.

```
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x  848 2005-10-19 11:36 src
drwxr-xr-x  632 2005-10-18 12:25 videos

$ mkdir test
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x  848 2005-10-19 11:36 src
drwxr-xr-x   48 2005-10-19 23:50 test
drwxr-xr-x  632 2005-10-18 12:25 videos
```

### Note

On most systems, new directories created by `mkdir` give the owner read, write, and execute permissions, while giving groups and the world read and execute permissions. Want to change those? Look in [Chapter 7](#) at the `chmod` command.

It should make you happy to know that your shell takes care of you: Attempts to create a directory that already exists fail and result in a warning message.

```
$ mkdir test
mkdir: cannot create directory 'test' : File exists
```

## Create a New Directory and Any Necessary Subdirectories

### **mkdir -p**

If you want to create a new subdirectory inside a new subdirectory inside a new subdirectory, this seems like a rather tedious task at first: create the first subdirectory, `cd` into that one, create the second subdirectory, `cd` into that one, and finally create the third subdirectory. Yuck. Fortunately, `mkdir` has a wonderful option that makes this whole process much more streamlined: `-p` (or `--parents`).

```
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x  848 2005-10-19 11:36 src

$ mkdir -p pictures/personal/family
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x   72 2005-10-20 00:12 pictures

drwxr-xr-x  848 2005-10-19 11:36 src

$ cd pictures
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x   72 2005-10-20 00:12  personal
cd personal
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x   48 2005-10-20 00:12  family
```

## Find Out What `mkdir` Is Doing As It Acts

### **mkdir -v**

Now isn't that much easier? Even easier still would be using the `-v` option (or `--verbose`), which tells you what `mkdir` is doing every step of the way, so you don't need to actually check to make sure `mkdir` has done its job.

```
$ mkdir -pv pictures/personal/family
mkdir: created directory 'pictures'
mkdir: created directory 'pictures/personal'
mkdir: created directory 'pictures/personal/family'
```

One of the best things about being a Linux user is that the OS goes out of its way to reward lazy users—the lazier the better—and this is a great way to see that in action.

## Copy Files

### cp

Making copies of files is one of those things that computer users, no matter the OS, find themselves doing all the time. One of the most venerable commands used by the Linux shell is `cp`, which copies files and directories. The easiest way to use `cp` is simply to type in the command, followed by the file you're wanting to copy, and then the copied file's new name; think of the command's structure as "`cp file-you're-copying-from file-you're-copying-to.`" Another common way to express that relationship is "`cp source target.`"

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls
libby.jpg
$ cp libby.jpg libby_bak.jpg
$ ls
libby_bak.jpg libby.jpg
```

This example is pretty simple: The picture is copied into the same directory as the original file. You can also copy files to another directory, or even copy files from a directory in which you're not currently located to another directory located somewhere else on your file system.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ ls ~/libby
libby_bak.jpg libby.jpg
$ cp pix/libby_arrowrock.jpg libby/arrowrock.jpg
$ ls ~/libby
arrowrock.jpg libby_bak.jpg libby.jpg
```

The same filename, `libby_closeup.jpg`, is used in this example, which is okay because the file is being copied into another directory entirely. In the first example for `cp`, however, you had to use a new name, `libby_bak.jpg` instead of `libby.jpg`, because you were copying the file into the same directory.

If you want to copy a file from another directory into your working directory (the one in which you currently find yourself), simply use `..` (Remember how you learned earlier in this chapter that `.` means "the current directory?" Now you see how that information can come in handy.) Of course, you can't change the name when you use `.` because it's a shortcut for the original filename.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls
libby_bak.jpg libby.jpg
$ cp pix/libby_arrowrock.jpg .
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby_bak.jpg libby.jpg
```

You don't need to specify a filename for the target if that target file is going to reside in a specific directory; instead, you can just provide the directory's name.



```
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x  224 2005-10-20 12:34 libby
drwxr-xr-x  216 2005-09-29 23:17 music
drwxr-xr-x  1.6K 2005-10-16 12:34 pix
$ ls libby
arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg
$ cp pix/libby_on_couch.jpg libby
$ ls libby
arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg
```

In the previous example, you need to be certain that a directory named `libby` already exists for `libby_on_couch.jpg` to be copied into, or you would have ended up with a file named `libby` in your home directory.

## Copy Files Using Wildcards

### **cp \***

It's time for more laziness, namely, the capability to copy several files at one time into a directory using wildcards. If you've been careful naming your files, this can be a really handy timesaver because you can exactly specify a group of files.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls ~/pix
arrowrock.jpg  by_pool_03.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
by_pool_01.jpg on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
by_pool_02.jpg on_floor_02.jpg
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg
$ cp ~/pix/by_pool*.jpg .
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg by_pool_02.jpg on_couch.jpg
by_pool_01.jpg by_pool_03.jpg libby.jpg
```

You aren't limited to the `*` wildcard; instead, you can more precisely identify which files you want to copy using a bracket that matches any characters named between the `[` and `]` characters. If you want to copy the first three `on_floor` pictures but not the fourth, that's easily done with `cp`.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls ~/pix
arrowrock.jpg by_pool_03.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
by_pool_01.jpg on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
by_pool_02.jpg on_floor_02.jpg
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg
$ cp ~/pix/on_floor_0[1-3].jpg .
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg  libby_on_couch.jpg  on_floor_02.jpg
libby.jpg      on_floor_01.jpg        on_floor_03.jpg
```

## Copy Files Verbosely

**cp -v**

Adding the `-v` option (or `--verbose`) shows you the progress of `cp` as it completes its work.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls ~/pix
arrowrock.jpg by_pool_03.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
by_pool_01.jpg on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
by_pool_02.jpg on_floor_02.jpg
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg
$ cp -v ~/pix/on_floor_0[1-3].jpg .
'/home/scott/pix/on_floor_01.jpg' -> './on_floor_01.jpg'
'/home/scott/pix/on_floor_02.jpg' -> './on_floor_02.jpg'
'/home/scott/pix/on_floor_03.jpg' -> './on_floor_03.jpg'
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg on_floor_02.jpg
libby.jpg      on_floor_01.jpg      on_floor_03.jpg
```

The `-v` option does a nice job of keeping you abreast of the `cp` command's progress. It does such a good job that you really don't need to run that last `ls` command because the `-v` option assures you that the files you wanted were in fact copied.

## Stop Yourself from Copying over Important Files

**cp -i**

The previous example demonstrates something important about `cp` that you need to know. In the "[Copy Files Using Wildcards](#)" example, you copied three `libby_on_floor` pictures into the `libby` directory; in the previous example, you copied the same three `libby_on_floor` images into the `libby` directory again. You copied over files that already existed, but `cp` didn't warn you, which is how Linux works: It assumes you know what you're doing, so it doesn't warn you about things like overwriting your files ... unless you ask it to do so. If you want to be forewarned before overwriting a file using the `cp` command, use the `-i` option (or `--interactive`). If you tried once again to copy the same files but used the `-i` option this time, you'd get a different result.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls ~/pix
arrowrock.jpg by_pool_03.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
by_pool_01.jpg on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
by_pool_02.jpg on_floor_02.jpg$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg on_floor_02.jpg
libby.jpg      on_floor_01.jpg      on_floor_03.jpg
$ cp -i ~/pix/on_floor_0[1-3].jpg .
cp: overwrite './on_floor_01.jpg'?
```

Bam! The `cp` command stops in its tracks to ask you if you want to overwrite the first file it's trying to copy, `libby_on_floor_01.jpg`. If you want to go ahead and copy the file, enter `y`; otherwise, enter `n`. If you do choose `n`, that doesn't mean the `cp` stops completely; instead, you're next asked about the next file, and the next, and so on. The only way to give an `n` to whole process is to cancel the whole process by pressing `Ctrl+c`. Similarly, there's no way to say yes to every question ahead of time, so if you want to copy 1,000 files over 1,000 other files with the same name and also intend to use the `-i` option, make sure you have plenty of time to sit and interact with your shell, because you're going to get asked 1,000 times if you really want to overwrite your files.

### Caution

For normal users, `-i` usually isn't necessary. For `root` users, however, it's darn near essential, as a `root` user can errantly copy over a key system file, causing a disaster. For that reason, it's a good idea to create an alias in the `root` user's `.bashrc` file, making sure that `cp` is really `cp -i` instead.

```
alias cp= 'cp -i'
```

## Copy Directories

### `cp -R`

So far you've looked at copying files, but there are times you'll want to copy directories as well. You can't just enter `cp source-directory target-directory`, though, because that won't work as you expected; the directory will copy, but not the files inside it.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ cp libby libby_bak
cp: omitting directory 'libby'
```

If you want to copy directories, you need to include the `-R` option (or `--recursive`), which you should recall from the `ls` command. The addition of `-R` means that the directory, as well as its contents, are copied.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x  328 2005-10-17 14:42 documents
drwxr-xr-x  240 2005-10-20 17:16 libby

$ cp -R libby libby_bak
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x  328 2005-10-17 14:42 documents
drwxr-xr-x  240 2005-10-20 17:16 libby
drwxr-xr-x  240 2005-10-20 17:17 libby_bak
```

## Copy Files As Perfect Backups in Another Directory

### **cp -a**

You might be thinking right now that `cp` would be useful for backing up files, and that is certainly true (although better programs exist, and we'll take a look at one of them `rsync` in [Chapter 15](#), "Working on the Network"). With a few lines in a bash shell script, however, `cp` can be an effective way to back up various files and directories. The most useful option in this case would be the `-a` option (or `--archive`), which is also equivalent to combining several options: `-dpR` (or `--no-dereference --preserve --recursive`). Another way of thinking about it is that `-a` ensures that `cp` doesn't follow symbolic links (which could grossly balloon your copy), preserves key file attributes such as owner and timestamp, and recursively follows subdirectories.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x    216 2005-10-21 11:31 libby
drwxr-xr-x    216 2005-09-29 23:17 music
$ ls -lR libby
libby:
total 312
-rw-r--r--    73786 2005-10-20 12:12 arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r--    18034 2005-04-19 00:57 libby.jpg
-rw-r--r--   198557 2005-04-19 00:57 on_couch.jpg
drwxr-xr-x     168 2005-10-21 11:31 on_floor

libby/on_floor:
total 764
-rw-r--r--   218849 2005-10-20 16:11 on_floor_01.jpg
-rw-r--r--   200024 2005-10-20 16:11 on_floor_02.jpg
-rw-r--r--   358986 2005-10-20 16:11 on_floor_03.jpg
$ cp -a libby libby_bak
$ ls -l
drwxr-xr-x    216 2005-10-21 11:31 libby
drwxr-xr-x    216 2005-10-21 11:31 libby_bak/
drwxr-xr-x    216 2005-09-29 23:17 music
$ ls -lR libby_bak
libby:
total 312
-rw-r--r--    73786 2005-10-20 12:12 arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r--    18034 2005-04-19 00:57 libby.jpg
-rw-r--r--   198557 2005-04-19 00:57 on_couch.jpg
drwxr-xr-x     168 2005-10-21 11:31 on_floor

libby/on_floor:
total 764
-rw-r--r--   218849 2005-10-20 16:11 on_floor_01.jpg
-rw-r--r--   200024 2005-10-20 16:11 on_floor_02.jpg
-rw-r--r--   358986 2005-10-20 16:11 on_floor_03.jpg
```

### Note

Yes, you've probably figured it out already, but let me confirm: Libby is my dog, a cute lil' shih-tzu who eventually ends up in some way in almost everything I write. To see her, check out

<http://www.granneman.com/go/libby>.

## Move and Rename Files

### **mv**

So `cp` copies files. That seems simple enough, but what about moving files? In the similar vein of removing unnecessary vowels in commands, we have the `mv` command, short for move.

You're going to notice quickly that most of the options you learned for `cp` are quite similar to those used by `mv`. This shouldn't surprise you; after all, `mv` in reality performs a `cp -a`, and then removes the file after it's been successfully copied.

At its simplest, `mv` moves a file from one location to another on your file system.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls
libby_arrowrock.jpg libby_bak.jpg libby.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg on_floor
$ ls ~/pictures/dogs
libby_on_floor_01.jpg libby_on_floor_03.jpg
libby_on_floor_02.jpg libby_on_floor_04.jpg
$ mv ~/pictures/dogs/libby_on_floor_04.jpg libby_on_floor_04.jpg
$ ls
libby_arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg libby_on_floor_04.jpg
libby_bak.jpg libby_on_couch.jpg on_floor
$ ls ~/pictures/dogs
libby_on_floor_01.jpg libby_on_floor_02.jpg libby_on_floor_03.jpg
```

Just as you did with `cp`, you can use a dot to represent the current directory if you don't feel like typing out the filename again.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg libby.jpg on_couch.jpg on_floor
$ ls ~/pictures/dogs
on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
on_floor_02.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
$ mv ~/pictures/dogs/on_floor_04.jpg .
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg on_couch.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
libby.jpg on_floor
$ ls ~/pictures/dogs
on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_02.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
```

If you're moving a file into a directory and you want to keep the same filename, you just need to specify the directory. The filename stays the same.

```
$ pwd
```

```

/home/scott/libby
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg on_couch.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
libby.jpg      on_floor
$ ls on_floor
on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_02.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
$ mv on_floor_04.jpg on_floor
$ ls
arrowrock.jpg on_couch.jpg on_floor_04.jpg
libby.jpg      on_floor
$ ls on_floor
on_floor_01.jpg on_floor_03.jpg
on_floor_02.jpg on_floor_04.jpg

```

In order to visually communicate that `on_floor` is in fact a directory, it's a good idea to use a `/` at the end of the directory into which you're moving files, like this: `mv libby_on_floor_04.jpg on_floor/`. If `on_floor` is not a directory, your `mv` won't work, thus preventing you from accidentally writing over a file.

### Note

The `cp` and `mv` commands use many of the same options, which work the same way for either command. For instance, `-v` copies and moves verbosely, and `-i` copies and moves interactively.

## Rename Files and Folders

### **mv**

As you'll soon see, however, `mv` does something more than move, something that might seem a bit counterintuitive, but which makes perfect sense after you think about it a moment.

At this point, it's a good idea to introduce the other cool feature of `mv`. Yes, `mv` moves files that's its name, after all but it also renames files. If you move a file, you have to give it a target name. There's no rule that the target name has to be the same as the source name, so shell users since time immemorial have relied on the `mv` command to rename files and directories.

```

$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool
$ ls -F
libby_by_pool_02.jpg liebermans/
$ mv liebermans/ lieberman_pool/
$ ls -F
libby_by_pool_02.jpg lieberman_pool/

```

When moving a directory using `cp`, you had to specify the `-R` (or `--recursive`) option in order to copy the actual directory itself. Not so with `mv`, which, as you can see in the previous example, happily moves or renames directories without the need for any extra option at all, a nice change from `cp`.

### Caution

You need to know a very important, and unfortunately easy to overlook, detail about `mv`. If you are moving a soft link that points to a directory, you need to be extremely careful about what you type. Let's say you have a soft link named `dogs` in your home directory that points to `/home/scott/pictures/dogs`, and you want to move the link into the `/home/scott/libby` subdirectory. This command moves just the soft link:

```
$ mv dogs ~/libby
```

This command, however, moves the directory to which the soft link points:

```
$ mv dogs/ ~/libby
```

What was the difference? A simple forward slash at the end of the soft link. No forward slash and you're moving the soft link itself, and just the link; include a forward slash and you're moving the directory to which the soft link is designed to point, not the soft link. Be careful!

## Delete Files

### **rm**

The `rm` command (short for remove) deletes files. It really, really removes them. They're gone. There's no trash can or recycle bin on the Linux command line. You're walking a tightrope, baby, and if you fall you go splat!

Okay, that's a little extreme. It's true that the shell lacks an undelete command, but you're not completely hosed if you delete a file. If you stop working on your machine the second you realize your mistake, if the operating system hasn't overwritten the erased file's sectors, and if you can successfully use some rather complicated file recovery software, yes, it's possible to recover files. But it's no fun, and you'll be cursing the whole time. Better to just be careful in the first place.

### Tip

Many folks have tried to provide some sort of safety net for `rm`, ranging from remapping or replacing the `rm` command to a temporary trash can ([www.comwt.com/open\\_source/projects/trashcan/](http://www.comwt.com/open_source/projects/trashcan/)); to adding a trash can onto the shell (<http://pages.stern.nyu.edu/~marriaga/software/libtrash/>); to creating a new command, `trash`, to replace `rm` ([www.ms.unimelb.edu.au/~jrlooker/shell.html#trash](http://www.ms.unimelb.edu.au/~jrlooker/shell.html#trash)).

If, on the other hand, you want to make positively sure that no one can possibly recover your deleted files, even men in black working for shadowy U.S. government agencies, use the `shred` command instead of `rm`. The `shred` command overwrites the file 25 times so it is impossible to re-create it. Before using `shred`, however, read its `man` page, as its success rate is highly dependent on the type of filesystem you're using.

Using `rm` is easy. Some would say almost too easy.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool/lieberman_pool
$ ls
pool_01.jpg      pool_03.jpg
pool_01.jpg_bak  pool_03.jpg_bak
$ rm pool_01.jpg_bak
$ ls
pool_01.jpg pool_03.jpg pool_03.jpg_bak
```

## Remove Several Files At Once with Wildcards

**`rm *`**

Wildcards such as `*` help to delete several files with one keystroke.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool/lieberman_pool
$ ls
pool_01.jpg      pool_03.jpg
pool_01.jpg_bak  pool_03.jpg_bak
$ rm *_bak
$ ls
pool_01.jpg pool_03.jpg
```

### Caution

Be very, very, very careful when removing files using wildcards, or you may delete far more than you intended! A classic example is typing `rm *txt` instead of typing `rm * txt` (see the errant space?). Instead of deleting all text files, the star means that all files were deleted, and then `rm` tries to delete a file named `txt`. Oops!

## Remove Files Verbosely

**`rm -v`**

If you want to see what `rm` is doing as it does it, use the `-v` (or `--verbose`) option.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool/lieberman_pool
$ ls
pool_01.jpg      pool_03.jpg
pool_01.jpg_bak  pool_03.jpg_bak
```



```
$ rm -v *_bak
removed 'pool_01.jpg_bak'
removed 'pool_03.jpg_bak'
$ ls
pool_01.jpg pool_03.jpg
```

## Stop Yourself from Deleting Key Files

**rm -i**

The `-i` option (or `--interactive`) provides a kind of safety net. It asks you before deleting every file. This is a good thing to use while you're running as `root`!

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool/lieberman_pool
$ ls
pool_01.jpg      pool_03.jpg
pool_01.jpg_bak pool_03.jpg_bak
$ rm -i *_bak
rm: remove regular file 'pool_01.jpg_bak'? y
rm: remove regular file 'pool_03.jpg_bak'? y
$ ls
pool_01.jpg pool_03.jpg
```

When `rm` asks you what to do, a `y` is an agreement to nuke the file, and an `n` is an order to spare the file and continue onward to the next file.

## Delete an Empty Directory

**rmdir**

Removing files isn't hard at all, but what about directories?

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool
$ ls
pool_02.jpg lieberman_pool lieberman_pool_bak
$ ls lieberman_pool_bak
pool_01.jpg      pool_03.jpg
pool_01.jpg_bak pool_03.jpg_bak
$ rm lieberman_pool_bak
rm: cannot remove 'lieberman_pool_bak/': Is a directory
```

After a few moments of looking around, you might find the `rmdir` command, which is specifically designed for deleting directories. So you try it.

```
$ rmdir lieberman_pool_bak
```

```
rmdir: 'lieberman_pool_bak/': Directory not empty
```

Dang it! That doesn't work either. The `rmdir` command only deletes empty directories. In this case, the `lieberman_pool_bak` folder only contains four items, so it wouldn't be too hard to empty it and then use `rmdir`. But what if you want to delete a directory that contains 10 subdirectories that each contains 10 more subdirectories and every single subdirectory contains 25 files? You're going to be deleting forever. There has to be an easier way! For that, see the next section.

## Remove Files and Directories That Aren't Empty

### **`rm -Rf`**

There is an easier way to remove directories with files. Use the combination of the `-R` (or `--recursive`) and `-f` (or `--force`) options. The `-r` tells `rm` to go down into every subdirectory it finds and delete everything, while the `-f` tells `rm` to just do it without bothering you with the niceties, such as folders that aren't empty.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/libby/by_pool
$ ls
pool_02.jpg lieberman_pool lieberman_pool_bak
$ ls lieberman_pool_bak
pool_01.jpg      pool_03.jpg
pool_01.jpg_bak  pool_03.jpg_bak
$ rm -Rf lieberman_pool_bak
$ ls
pool_02.jpg lieberman_pool
```

Pow! That's a sure-fire way to get rid of a directory and all the files and subdirectories inside it.

### Caution

The `rm -Rf` command can destroy your important files and your system.

The classic Linux warning is not to type `rm -Rf /*` as `root`. Yes, you will erase your system. No, it will not be pretty. Yes, you will feel stupid.

In general, be careful when using wildcards with `rm -Rf`. There's a huge difference between `rm -Rf libby*` and `rm -Rf libby *`. The former deletes everything in the working directory that begins with `libby`; the latter deletes any file or folder named exactly `libby`, and then deletes everything else in the directory.

You can also inadvertently create a disaster if you mean to enter `rm -Rf ~/libby/*` and instead fat finger your command and tell the shell `rm -Rf ~/libby /*`. First the `~/libby` directory leaves, and then your file system begins its rapid journey toward nonexistence.

Here's one that's bitten a few folks trying to be clever: Never type `rm -Rf . */*` to delete a directory that begins with `.` because you'll also match `..` and end up deleting everything above your current working folder

as well. Oops!

Once again: Be careful using `rm -Rf` when you're a normal user. Be hyper vigilant and paranoid when using `rm -Rf` as root!

## Delete Troublesome Files

Before leaving `rm`, you should know a couple of things about its relationship to certain files on your system. First, no matter how hard you try, you will not be able to remove the `.` or `..` directories because they are required to keep your file system hierarchy in place. Besides, why would you want to remove them? Leave'em alone!

How do you remove a file with a space in it? The normal way of invoking `rm` the command, followed by the filename won't work because `rm` thinks you're talking about two different files. Actually, removing Cousin Harold's picture isn't too hard. Just put the name of the file in quotation marks.

```
$ ls
cousin harold.jpg -cousin_roy.jpg cousin_beth.jpg
$ rm cousin harold.jpg
rm: cannot remove 'cousin': No such file or directory
rm: cannot remove 'harold.jpg': No such file or directory
$ rm "cousin harold.jpg"
$ ls
-cousin_roy.jpg cousin_beth.jpg
```

Here's more of a head-scratcher: How do you remove a file whose name starts with `-`?

```
$ ls
-cousin_roy.jpg cousin_beth.jpg
$ rm -cousin_roy.jpg
rm: invalid option -- c
Try 'rm --help' for more information.
```

D'oh! The `rm` command sees the `-` and thinks it's the start of an option, but it doesn't recognize an option that starts with `c`. It continues with `ousin_roy.jpg` and doesn't know what to do.

You have two solutions. You can preface the problematic filename with `--`, which indicates to the command that anything coming afterward should not be taken as an option, and is instead a file or folder.

```
$ ls
-cousin_roy.jpg cousin_beth.jpg
$ rm -- -cousin_roy.jpg
$ ls
cousin_beth.jpg
```

Otherwise, you can use the `.` as part of your pathname, thus bypassing the space before the `-` that confuses the `rm` command and leads it into thinking the filename is actually an option.

```
$ ls
-cousin_roy.jpg cousin_beth.jpg
$ rm ./-cousin_roy.jpg
$ ls
cousin_beth.jpg
```

It just goes to show that the ingenuity of Linux users runs deep. That, and try not to put a hyphen at the beginning of your filename!

## Become Another User

### **su username**

The `su` command (which stands for switch user, not, as is popularly imagined, super user) can allow one user to temporarily act as another, but it is most often used when you want to quickly become `root` in your shell, run a command or two, and then go back to being your normal, non-`root` user. Think of it as Clark Kent changing into his Superman duds, righting a few wrongs, and then going back to his non-super self.

Invoking `su` isn't difficult. Just enter `su`, followed by the user whose identity you want to assume.

```
$ ls
/home/scott/libby
$ whoami
scott
$ su gromit
Password:
$ whoami
gromit
$ ls
/home/scott/libby
```

There's a new command in that example, one that's not exactly the most widely used: `whoami`. It just tells you who you are, as far as the shell is concerned. Here, you're using it to verify that `su` is working as you'd expected.

## Become Another User, with His Environment Variables

### **su -l**

The `su` command only works if you know the password of the user. No password, no transformation. If it does work, you switch to the shell that the user has specified in the `/etc/passwd` file: `sh`, `tcsh`, or `bash`, for instance. Most Linux users just use the default `bash` shell, so you probably won't see any differences there. Notice also in the previous example that you didn't change directories when you changed users. In essence, you've become `gromit`, but you're still using `scott`'s environment variables. It's as if you found Superman's suit and put it on. You might look like Superman (yeah, right!), but you wouldn't have any of his powers.

The way to fix that is to use the `-l` option (or `--login`).

```
$ ls
/home/scott/libby
$ whoami
scott
$ su -l gromit
Password:
$ whoami
gromit
$ ls
/home/gromit
```

Things look mostly the same as the "[Become Another User](#)" example, but things are very different behind the scenes. The fact that you're now in `gromit`'s home directory should demonstrate that something has changed. The `-l` option tells `su` to use a login shell, as though `gromit` actually logged in to the machine. You're now `gromit` in name, but you're using `gromit`'s environment variables, and you're in `gromit`'s home directory (where `gromit` would find himself when he first logged in to this machine). It's as though putting on Superman's skivvies also gave you the ability to actually leap tall buildings in a single bound!

## Become `root`

### `su`

At the beginning of this chapter, the point was made that most times `su` is used to become `root`. You could use `su root`, or better still, `su -l root`, but there is a quicker way.

```
$ whoami
scott
$ su
Password:
$ whoami
root
```

## Become `root`, with Its Environment Variables

### `su -`

Entering `su` all by its lonesome is equivalent to typing in `su root`; you're `root` in name and power, but that's all. Behind the scenes, your non-`root` environment variables are still in place, as shown here:

```
$ ls
/home/scott/libby
$ whoami
scott
$ su
Password:
```

```
$ whoami
root
$ ls
/home/scott/libby
```

When you use `su -`, you not only become `root`, you also use `root`'s environment variables.

```
$ ls
/home/scott/libby
$ whoami
scott
$ su -
Password:
$ whoami
root
$ ls
/root
```

Now that's better! Appending `-` after `su` is the same as `su -l root`, but requires less typing. You're `root` in name, power, and environment, which means you're fully `root`. To the computer, anything that `root` can do, you can do. Have fun with your superpowers, but remember that with great power comes great aw, you know how it ends.

## Conclusion

If this was law school, you would have learned in this chapter what misdemeanors, torts, and felonies are. If this was a hardware repair class, it would have been RAM, hard drives, and motherboards. Since this is a book about the Linux shell, you've examined the most basic commands that a Linux user needs to know to effectively use the command line: `ls`, `pwd`, `cd`, `touch`, `mkdir`, `cp`, `mv`, `rm`, and `su`. `rmdir` and `whoami` were thrown in as extra goodies. With these vital commands under your belt, you're ready to move ahead to learning about how to learn about commands. Twisty? You ain't seen nothin' yet.

## Chapter 3. Learning About Commands

In [Chapter 2](#), "The Basics," you started learning about some basic system commands. You covered a lot, but even so, much was left out. The `ls` command is an incredibly rich, powerful tool, with far more options than were provided in [Chapter 2](#). So how can you learn more about that command or others that pique your interest? And how can you discover commands if you don't even know their names? That's where this chapter comes in. Here you will find out how to learn more about the commands you already know, those you know you don't know, and even those that you don't know that you don't know!

Let's start with the two 800-pound gorillas `man` and `info` and move from there to some smaller, more precise commands that actually use much of the data collected by `man`. By the time you're finished, you'll be ready to start learning about the huge variety of tools available to you in your shell environment.

## Find Out About Commands with `man`

### `man ls`

Want to find out about a Linux command? Why, it's easy! Let's say you want to find out more about the `ls` command. Enter `man ls`, and the `man` (short for manual) page appears, chock full of info about the various facets of `ls`. try the same thing for some of the other commands you've examined in this book. You'll find `man` pages for (almost) all of them.

Still, as useful as `man` pages are, they still have problems. You have to know the name of a command to really use them (although there are ways around that particular issue), and they're sometimes out of date and missing the latest features of a command. They don't always exist for every command, which can be annoying. But worst of all, even if you find one that describes a command in which you're interested and it's up to date, you might still have a big problem: It might be next to useless.

The same developers who write the programs usually (but not always) write the `man` pages. Most of the developers who write applications included with a Linux distribution are excellent programmers, but not always effective writers or explainers of their own work. They know how things work, but they too often forget that users don't know the things that the developers find obvious and intuitive.

With all of those problems, however, `man` pages are still a good resource for Linux users at all levels of experience. If you're going to use Linux on the command line, you need to learn how to use and read `man` pages.

As stated before, using this command isn't hard. Just enter `man`, followed by the command about which you want to learn more.

```
$ man ls
LS(1)      User Commands      LS(1)
NAME
  ls - list directory contents
SYNOPSIS
  ls [OPTION]... [FILE]...
DESCRIPTION
  List information about the FILES (the current
  directory by default).
  Sort entries alphabetically if none of -cftuSUX
  nor --sort.
  Mandatory arguments to long options are mandatory
  for short options too.
  -a, --all
    do not hide entries starting with .
  -A, --almost-all
    do not list implied . and ..
[Listing condensed due to length]
```

The list of data `man` provides in this case is quite extensive over 200 lines worth, in fact. Of course, not all commands provide that much, and some provide far more. Your job is to read the various sections provided in a `man` page, which usually (but not always) consist of the following:

- **NAME** The name of the command and a brief description
- **SYNOPSIS** The basic format of the command

- **DESCRIPTION** A longer overview of the command's purpose
- **OPTIONS** The real meat and potatoes of man: The various options for the command, along with short explanations of each one
- **FILES** Other files used by the command
- **AUTHOR** Who wrote the command, along with contact information
- **BUGS** Known bugs and how to report new ones
- **COPYRIGHT** This one's obvious: Information about copyright
- **SEE ALSO** Other, related commands

Moving around in a man page isn't that hard. To move down a line at a time, use the down arrow; to move up a line at a time, use the up arrow. To jump down a page, press the spacebar or `f` (for forward); to jump up a page, press `b` (for backward). When you reach the end of a man page, `man` might quit itself, depositing you back on the shell; it might, however, simply stop at the end without quitting, in which case you should press `q` to quit the program. In fact, you can press `q` at any time to exit `man` if you're not finding the information you want.

It can be hard to find a particular item in a man page, so sometimes you need to do a little searching. To search on a man page after it's open, type `/`, followed by your search term, and then press Enter. If your term exists, you'll jump to it; to jump to the next occurrence of the term, press Enter again (or `n`), and keep pressing Enter (or `n`) to jump down the screen to each occurrence; to go backward, press `Shift+n`.

## Search for a Command Based on What It Does

### `man -k`

With just a little training, you find that you can zoom around man pages and find exactly what you need...assuming you know which man page to read. What if you know a little about what a command does, but you don't know the actual name of the command? Try using the `-k` option (or `--apropos`) and search for a word or phrase that describes the kind of command you want to discover. You'll get back a list of all commands whose name or synopsis matches your search term.

```
$ man list
No manual entry for list
$ man -k list
last (1) - show listing of last logged in users
ls (1) - list directory contents
lshal (1) - List devices and their properties
lshw (1) - list hardware
lsof (8) - list open files
[Listing condensed due to length]
```

Be careful with the `-k` option, as it can produce a long list of results, and you might miss what you were looking for. Don't be afraid to try a different search term if you think it might help you find the command you need.

### Tip

The `-k` option, also represented by `--apropos`, is exactly the same as the `apropos` command.



## Quickly Find Out What a Command Does Based on Its Name

### **man -f**

If you know a command's name but don't know what it does, there's a quick and dirty way to find out without requiring you to actually open the man page for that command. Use the `-f` option (or `--what-is`), and the command's synopsis appears.

```
$ man -f ls
ls (1)                - list directory contents
```

### Tip

Yes, the `-f` option, also known as `--what-is`, is the spitting image of the `what-is` command, which is examined in more detail later in this chapter.

## Rebuild man's Database of Commands

### **man -u**

Occasionally you'll try to use `man` to find out information about a command and `man` reports that there is no page for that command. Before giving up, try again with the `-u` option (or `--update`), which forces `man` to rebuild the database of commands and man pages it uses. It's often a good first step if you think things aren't quite as they should be.

```
$ man ls
No manual entry for ls
$ man -u ls
LS(1)                User Commands      LS(1)
NAME
  ls - list directory contents
SYNOPSIS
  ls [OPTION]... [FILE]...
[Listing condensed due to length]
```

## Read a Command's Specific Man Page

### **man** [1–8]

You might notice in the previous listing that the first line of `man`'s page on `ls` references `LS(1)`, while earlier, when you used the `-k` option, all the names of commands were also followed by numbers in parentheses. Most of them are 1, but one, `lsuf`, is 8. So what's up with all of these numbers?

The answer is that `man` pages are categorized into various sections, numbered from 1 to 8, which break down as follows (and don't worry if you don't recognize some of the example, as many of them are pretty arcane and specialized):

1. General commands. Examples are `cd`, `chmod`, `lp`, `mkdir`, and `passwd`.
2. Low-level system calls provided by the kernel. Examples are `intro` and `chmod`.
3. C library functions. Examples are `beep`, `HTML::Parser`, and `Mail::Internet`.
4. Special files, such as devices found in `/dev`. Examples are `console`, `lp`, and `mouse`.
5. File formats and conventions. Examples are `apt.conf`, `dpkg.cfg`, `hosts`, and `passwd`.
6. Games. Examples are `atlantik`, `bouncingcow`, `kmahjongg`, and `rubik`.
7. Miscellanea, including macro packages. Examples are `ascii`, `samba`, and `utf-8`.
8. System administration commands used by `root`. Examples are `mount` and `shutdown`.

Almost every command we've looked at so far in this book falls into section 1, which isn't surprising because we're focused on general use of your Linux system. But notice how some commands fall into more than one section: `chmod`, for instance, is in both 1 and 2, while `passwd` can be found in 1 and 5. By default, if you enter `man passwd` in your shell, `man` defaults to the lower number, so you'll get the section 1 `man` page for `passwd`, which isn't very helpful if you want to learn about the file `passwd`. To see the `man` page for the file `passwd`, follow `man` with the section number for the data you want to examine.

```
$ man passwd
PASSWD(1)                                PASSWD(1)
NAME
    passwd - change user password
SYNOPSIS
    passwd [-f|-s] [name]
    passwd [-g] [-r|-R] group
    passwd [-x max] [-n min] [-w warn] [-i inact]
login
    passwd {-l|-u|-d|-S|-e} login
DESCRIPTION
    passwd changes passwords for user and group accounts. A normal user...
[Listing condensed due to length]
$ man 5 passwd
PASSWD(5)                                PASSWD(5)
NAME
    passwd - The password file
DESCRIPTION
    passwd contains various pieces of information for each user account.
[Listing condensed due to length]
```

## Print Man Pages

**man -t**

As easy as it is to view man pages using a terminal program, sometimes it's necessary to print out a man page for easier reading and cogitation. Printing a man page isn't a one-step process, however, and the commands that round out this particular section are actually using principles that will be covered extensively later. But if you want to print out a man page, this is the way to do it. Just have faith that you'll understand what these commands mean more fully after reading upcoming chapters.

Let's say you have a printer that you have identified with the name `hp_laserjet` connected to your system. You want to print a man page about the `ls` command directly to that printer, so use the `-t` option (or `--troff`) and then pipe the output to the `lpr` command, identifying your printer with the `-P` option.

```
$ man -t ls | lpr -P hp_laserjet
```

### Note

You'll learn about the pipe symbol (`|`) in [Chapter 4, "Building Blocks,"](#) and `lpr` in [Chapter 6, "Printing and Managing Print Jobs."](#)

In just a moment or two, depending upon the speed of your computer and your printer, `hp_laserjet` should begin spitting out the man pages for `ls`. Maybe you don't want to actually print the pages, however. Maybe just creating PDFs of the man page for the `ls` command would be enough. Once again, the commands to do so might seem a bit arcane now, but they will be far more comprehensible very soon.

Again, you use the `-t` option, but this time you send the output to a PostScript file named for the `ls` command. If that process completes successfully, you convert the PostScript file to a PDF using the `ps2pdf` command, and then after that finishes correctly, you delete the original PostScript file because it's no longer needed.

```
$ man -t ls > ls.ps && ps2pdf ls.ps && rm ls.ps
```

### Note

You'll learn about the `>` and `&&` symbols in [Chapter 4](#) and `ps2pdf` in [Chapter 6](#).

If you want to make a printed library of man pages covering your favorite commands, or if you want that library in PDF format (which can then be printed to hard copies, if necessary), now you know how to do it. For something so simple, `man` is powerful and flexible, which makes it even more useful than it already is.

## Learn About Commands with `info`

### `info`

The `man` command, and the resulting man pages, are simple to work with, even if the content isn't always as user friendly as you might like. In response to that and other perceived shortcomings with man pages, the GNU Project, which is responsible in many ways for many of the commands you're reading about in this book, created its own format: Info pages, which use the `info` command for viewing.

Info pages tend to be better written, more comprehensive, and more user friendly in terms of content than man pages, but man pages are far easier to use. A man page is just one page, while Info pages almost always organize their contents into multiple sections, called nodes, which might also contain subsections, called subnodes. The trick is learning how to navigate not just around an individual page, but also between nodes and subnodes. It can be a bit overwhelming at first to just move around and find what you're seeking in Info pages, which is rather ironic: Something that was supposed to be nicer for newbies than `man` is actually far harder for the novice to learn and use.

There are many facets to `info`, and one of the best commands to use `info` against is, in fact, `info`. To learn how to use `info`, as well as read about `info`, enter the following command:

```
$ info info
```

This opens the Info page for the `info` command. Now you need to learn how to get around in this new Info world.

## Navigate Within `info`

Within a particular section's screen, to move down, or forward, one line at a time, use the down arrow; to move up, or back, one line at a time, use the up arrow. When you reach the bottom, or end, of a particular section, your cursor stops and you are not able to proceed.

If you instead want to jump down a screen at a time, use your keyboard's PageDown button; to jump up a screen at a time, use the PageUp key instead. You are not able to leave the particular section you're in, however.

If you reach the end of the section and you want to jump back to the top, just press `b`, which stands for beginning. Likewise, `e` takes you to the "end."

If, at any time, as you're jumping around from place to place, you notice that things look a little strange, such as the letters or words being distorted, press `Ctrl+l` to redraw the screen, and all should be well.

Now that you know how to navigate within a particular section or node, let's move on to navigating between nodes. If you don't want to use PageDown and PageUp to move forward and backward within a section, you can instead use the spacebar to move down and the Backspace or Delete keys to move up. These keys offer one big advantage over PageDown and PageUp, besides being easier to reach: When you hit the end of a node, you automatically proceed onward to the next node, through subnodes if they exist. Likewise, going up moves you back to the previous node, through any subnodes. Using the spacebar, or the Backspace or Delete buttons, you can quickly run through an entire set of Info pages about a particular command.

If you want to engage in fewer key presses, you can use `n` (for next) to move on to the next node at the same level. If you are reading a node that had subnodes and you press `n`, you skip those subnodes and move to the next node that's a peer of the one you're currently reading. If you reading a subnode and press `n`, however, you jump to the next subnode. If `n` moves you to the next node at the current level, then `p` moves you to the previous one (`p` for previous, get it?), again at the same level.

If you instead want to move forward to a node or subnode, use the `]`, or right square brace, key. If you're reading a node and you press `]`, you'll jump to that node's first subnode, if one exists. Otherwise, you'll move to that node's next peer node. To move backward in the same fashion, use the `[`, or left square brace, key.

If you want to move up a node, to the parent of the node you're currently reading, use the `u` (for up) key. Be careful, though it's easy to jump up past the home page of the command you're reading about in Info to what is termed the Directory node, the root node that leads to all other Info nodes (another way to reach the Directory node is to type `d`, for directory, at any time).

The Directory node is a particularly large example of a type of page you find all throughout Info: a Menu page, which lists all subnodes or nodes. If you ever find yourself on a Menu page, you can quickly navigate to one of the subnodes listed in that menu in one of two ways. First, type an `m` (for menu) and then start typing the name of the subnode to which you want to jump. For instance, here's the first page you see when you enter `info info` on the command line:

```
[View full width]File: info.info, Node: Top, Next: Getting Started, Up: (dir)
```

```
Info: An Introduction
*****
```

```
The GNU Project distributes most of its on-line manuals in the "Info format", which you
  read using an "Info reader" . You are probably using an Info reader to read this now.
[content condensed due to length]
```

```
* Menu:
* Getting Started:: Getting started using an Info reader.
* Expert Info:: Info commands for experts.
* Creating an Info File:: How to make your own Info file.
* Index:: An index of topics, commands, and variables.
```

To jump to Expert Info, you could type `m`, followed by `Exp`. At this point, you could finish typing `ert` `Info`, or you could just press the Tab key and Info fills in the rest of the menu name that matches the characters you've already entered. If Info complains, you have entered a typo, or more than one menu choice matches the characters you've typed. Fix your typo, or enter more characters until it is obvious to Info which menu choice is the one in which you're interested. If you realize that you don't want to go to a Menu choice at this time, press `Ctrl+g` to cancel your command, and go back to reading the node on which you find yourself.

Alternatively, you could just use your up or down arrow key to position the cursor over the menu choice you want, and then press Enter. Either method works.

If you don't want to navigate Info pages and instead want to search, you can do that as well, in two ways: By searching just the titles of all nodes for the Info pages about a particular command, or by searching in the actual text of all nodes associated with a particular command. To search the titles, enter `i` (for index because this search uses the node index created by Info), followed by your search term, and press Enter. If your term exists somewhere in a node's title, you'll jump to it. If you want to repeat your search and go to the next result, press the comma key.

If you want to search text instead of titles, enter `s` (for search), followed by your search term or phrase, and then press Enter. To repeat that search, enter `s`, followed immediately by Enter. That's not as easy as just pressing the comma key like you do when you're searching titles, but it does work.

If at any time you get lost inside Info and need help, just press the `?` key and the bottom half of your window displays all of the various options for Info. Move up and down in that section using the keys you've already learned. When you want to get out of help, press `l`.

Finally, and perhaps most importantly, to get out of Info altogether, just press `q`, for quit, which dumps you back in your shell. Whew!

## Locate the Paths for a Command's Executable, Source Files, and Man Pages

### **whereis**

The `whereis` command performs an incredibly useful function: It tells you the paths for a command's executable program, its source files (if they exist), and its man pages. For instance, here's what you might get for `KWord`, the word processor in the `KOffice` set of programs (assuming, of course, that the binary, source, and man files are all installed):

```
[View full width]$ whereis kword
kword: /usr/src/koffice-1.4.1/kword /usr/bin/kword/usr/bin/X11/kword usr/share/man/man1
/kword.1.gz
```

The `whereis` command first reports where the source files are: `/usr/src/koffice-1.4.1/kword`. Then it informs you as to the location of any binary executables: `/usr/bin/kword` and `/usr/bin/X11/kword`. `KWord` is found in two places on this machine, which is a bit unusual but not bizarre. Finally, you find out where the man pages are: `/usr/share/man/man1/kword.1.gz`. Armed with this information, you can now verify that the program is in fact installed on this computer, and you know now how to run it.

If you want to search only for binaries, use the `-b` option.

```
$ whereis -b kword
kword: /usr/bin/kword /usr/bin/X11/kword
```

If you want to search only for man pages, the `-m` option is your ticket.

```
$ whereis -m kword
kword: /usr/share/man/man1/kword.1.gz
```

Finally, if you want to limit your search only to sources, try the `-s` option.

```
$ whereis -s kword
kword: /usr/src/koffice-1.4.1/kword
```

The `whereis` command is a good, quick way to find vital information about programs on the computer you're using. You'll find yourself using it more than you think.

## Read Descriptions of Commands

### **whatis**

Earlier in this chapter you found out about the `-f` option for `man`, which prints onscreen the description of a command found in a man page. If you can remember that `man -f` presents that information, bully for you. It might be easier, however, to remember the `whatis` command, which does exactly the same thing: Displays the man page description for a command.

```
$ man -f ls
ls (1) - list directory contents
$ whatis ls
ls (1) - list directory contents
```

The `whatis` command also supports regular expressions and wildcards. To search the man database using wildcards, use the `-w` option (or `--wildcard`).

```
$ whatis -w ls*
ls (1) - list directory contents
lsb (8) - Linux Standard Base support for Debian
lshal (1) - List devices and their properties
lshw (1) - list hardware
lskat (6) - Lieutenant Skat card game for KDE
[Listing condensed due to length]
```

Using wildcards might result in a slightly slower search than `whatis` without options, but it's pretty negligible on today's fast machines, so you probably don't have to worry about it.

Regular expressions can be used with the `-r` (or `--regex`) option.

```
$ whatis -r ^rm.*
rm (1) - remove files or directories
rmail (8) - handle remote mail received via uucp
rmdir (1) - remove empty directories
rmt (8) - remote magtape protocol module
```

### Tip

There's not enough room in this book to cover regular expressions, but you can read more in *Sams Teach Yourself Regular Expressions in 10 Minutes* (ISBN: 0672325667) by Ben Forta.

Again, regular expressions are supposed to slow down the response you get with `whatis`, but you'll probably never notice it.

The `whatis` command is easy to remember (easier than `man -f`, some would say) and it quickly returns some important information, so memorize it.

## Find a Command Based on What It Does

### **apropos**

The `whatis` command is similar to `man -f`, and the `apropos` command is likewise similar to `man -k`. Both commands search man pages for the names and descriptions of commands, helping you if you know what a command does but can't remember its name.

#### Note

The word `apropos` isn't exactly in common usage, but it is a real word, and it means, essentially, "relevant" or "pertinent." The word `appropriate` has a somewhat similar meaning, but it's based on a different Latin root than `apropos`. Check the words out at [www.answers.com](http://www.answers.com) for yourself if you're a fellow linguaphile.

Using `apropos` is easy: Just follow the command with a word or phrase describing the feature of the command in which you're interested.

```
$ man list
No manual entry for list
$ man -k list
last (1) - show listing of last logged in users
ls (1) - list directory contents
lshw (1) - list hardware
lsof (8) - list open files
[Listing condensed due to length]
$ apropos list
last (1) - show listing of last logged in users
ls (1) - list directory contents
lshw (1) - list hardware
lsof (8) - list open files
[Listing condensed due to length]
```

Just like `whatis`, you can use the `-w` (or `--wildcard`) or the `-r` (or `--regex`) options for searches. More interestingly, though, you can use the `-e` option (or `--exact`) when you want to tightly focus on a word or phrase, without any exception. For instance, in the previous listing, searching for `list` turned up the `last` command because it had the word `listing` in its description. Let's try that same search, but with the `-e` option.

```
$ apropos -e list
ls (1) - list directory contents
lshw (1) - list hardware
lsof (8) - list open files
[Listing condensed due to length]
```



This time, `last` doesn't show up because you wanted only results with the exact word list, not listing. In fact, the list of results for `list` went from 80 results without the `-e` option to 55 results with the `-e` option, which makes it far easier to precisely target your command searches and find exactly the command you want.

## Find Out Which Version of a Command Will Run

### **which**

Think back to the `whereis` command and what happened when you ran it against `KWord` using the `-b` option, for show binaries only.

```
$ whereis -b kword
kword: /usr/bin/kword /usr/bin/X11/kword
```

The executable for `KWord` is in two places. But which one will run first? You can tell that by running the `which` command.

```
$ which kword
/usr/bin/kword
```

The `which` command tells you which version of a command will run if you just type its name. In other words, if you type in `kword` and then press Enter, your shell executes the one found inside `/usr/bin`. If you want to run the version found in `/usr/bin/X11`, you have to change directories using the `cd` command and then enter `./kword`, or use the absolute path for the command and type out `/usr/bin/X11/kword`.

The `which` command is also a speedy way to tell if a command is on your system. If the command is on your system and in your `PATH`, you'll be told where to find it; if the command doesn't exist, you're back on the command line with nothing.

```
$ which arglebargle
$
```

If you want to find all the locations of a command (just like you would if you used `whereis -b`), try the `-a` (for all) option.

```
$ which -a kword
/usr/bin/kword
/usr/bin/X11/kword
```

## Conclusion

The title of this chapter is "[Learning About Commands](#)," and that's what we've covered. By now, you've seen that there are a variety of ways to find out more about your options on the command line. The two big dogs are `man` and `info`, with their volumes of data and descriptions about virtually all the commands found on your Linux computer. Remember that `whereis`, `whatis`, `apropos`, and `which` all have their places as well, especially if your goal is to avoid having to wade through the sometimes overwhelming verbiage of `man` and `info`, an understandable but often impossible goal. Sometimes you just have to roll up your sleeves and start reading a man page. Think of it like broccoli: You might not enjoy it, but it's good for you.

It's true that many of the commands in this chapter overlap to a degree. For instance, `man -k` is the same as `apropos` and `man -f` is just like `whatis`, while `whereis -b` is functionally equivalent to `which -a`. The choice of which one to use in a given situation is up to you. It's still a good idea, however, to know the various similarities, so you'll be able to read shell scripts or instructions given by others and understand exactly what's happening. Linux is all about variety and choice, even in such seemingly small matters as commands run in the shell.

## Chapter 4. Building Blocks

When you're young, you learn numbers, and then later you learn how to combine and work with those numbers using symbols such as `+`, `,`, `x`, and `=`. So far in this book, you've learned several commands, but each one has been run one at a time. Commands can actually be combined in more complex and more interesting ways, however, using various symbols such as `|`, `>`, `>>`, and `<`. This chapter takes a look at those building blocks that enable you to do some useful things with the commands you've learned and the commands you'll be examining in greater detail in subsequent chapters.

### Run Several Commands Sequentially

;

What if you have several commands you need to run consecutively, but some of them are going to take a long time, and you don't feel like babysitting your computer? For instance, what if you have a huge number of John Coltrane MP3s in a zipped archive file, and you want to unzip them, place them in a new subdirectory, and then delete the archive file? Normally you'd have to run those commands one at a time, like this:

Note

In order to save space, I removed the owner and group from the long listing.

```
$ ls -l /home/scott/music
-rw-r--r-- 1437931 2005-11-07 17:19 JohnColtrane.zip
$ unzip /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip
$ mkdir -p /home/scott/music/coltrane
$ mv /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane*.mp3 /home/scott/music/coltrane/
$ rm /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip
```

`JohnColtrane.zip` is a 1.4GB file, and even on a fast machine, unzipping that monster is going to take some time, and you probably have better things to do than sit there and wait. Command stacking to the rescue!

Command stacking puts all the commands you want to run on one line in your shell, with each specific command separated by a semicolon (;). Each command is then executed in sequential order and each must terminate successfully or unsuccessfully before the next one runs. It's easy to do, and it can really save you some time.

With command stacking, the previous series of commands now looks like this:

```
[View full width]$ ls -l /home/scott/music
-rw-r--r-- 1437931 2005-11-07 17:19 JohnColtrane.zip
$ unzip /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip ; mkdir -p /home/scott/music/coltrane ; mv
/home/scott/music/JohnColtrane*.mp3 /home/scott/music/coltrane/ ; rm /home/scott/music
/JohnColtrane.zip
```

Of course, you can also use this method to introduce short delays as commands run. If you want to take a screenshot of everything you see in your monitor, just run the following command (this assumes you have the ImageMagick package installed, which virtually all Linux distributions do):

```
$ sleep 3 ; import -frame window.tif
```

The `sleep` command in this case waits three seconds, and then the screenshot is taken using `import`. The delay gives you time to minimize your terminal application and bring to the foreground any windows you want to appear in the screenshot. The `;` makes it easy to separate the commands logically so you get maximum use out of them.

### Caution

Be very careful when command stacking, especially when deleting or moving files! Make sure what you typed is what you want because the commands will run, one right after another, and you might end up with unexpected surprises.

## Run Commands Only If the Previous Ones Succeed

&&

In the previous section, you saw that `;` separates commands, as in this example:

```
[View full width]$ unzip /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip ; mkdir -p /home/scott/music/coltrane
/home/scott/music/JohnColtrane*.*mp3 /home/scott/music/coltrane/ ; rm /home/scott/music
/JohnColtrane.zip
```

What if you fat finger your command, and instead type this:

```
[View full width]$ unzip /home/scott/JohnColtrane.zip ; mkdir -p /home/scott/music/coltrane ; mv /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane*.mp3 /home/scott/music/coltrane/ ; rm /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip
```

Instead of `unzip /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip`, you accidentally enter `unzip /home/scott/JohnColtrane.zip`. You fail to notice this, so you go ahead and press Enter, and then get up and walk away. Your computer can't unzip `/home/scott/JohnColtrane.zip` because that file doesn't exist, so it blithely continues onward to the next command (`mkdir`), which it performs without a problem. However, the third command can't be performed (`mv`) because there aren't any MP3 files to move because `unzip` didn't work. Finally, the fourth command runs, deleting the zip file (notice that you provided the correct path this time) and leaving you with no way to recover and start over. Oops!

Note

Don't believe that this chain of events can happen? I did something very similar to it just a few days ago. Yes, I felt like an idiot.

That's the problem with using `;` commands run in sequence, regardless of their successful completion. A better method is to separate the commands with `&&`, which also runs each command one after the other, but only if the previous one completes successfully (technically, each command must return an exit status of 0 for the next one to run). If a command fails, the entire chain of commands stops.

If you'd used `&&` instead of `;` in the sequence of previous commands, it would have looked like this:

```
[View full width]$ unzip /home/scott/JohnColtrane.zip && mkdir -p /home/scott/music/coltrane && mv /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane*.mp3 /home/scott/music/coltrane/ && rm /home/scott/music/JohnColtrane.zip
```

Because the first `unzip` command couldn't complete successfully, the entire process stops. You walk back later to find that your series of commands failed, but `JohnColtrane.zip` still exists, so you can try once again. Much better!

Here are two more examples that show you just how useful `&&` can be. In [Chapter 13, "Installing Software,"](#) you're going to learn about `apt`, a fantastic way to upgrade your Debian-based Linux box. When you use `apt`, you first update the list of available software, and then find out if there are any upgrades available. If the list of software can't be updated, you obviously don't want to bother looking for upgrades. To make sure the second process doesn't (uselessly) occur, separate the commands with `&&`:

```
# apt-get update && apt-get upgrade
```

Example two: You want to convert a PostScript file to a PDF using the `ps2pdf` command, print the PDF, and then delete the PostScript file. The best way to set up these commands is with `&&`:

```
$ ps2pdf foobar.ps && lpr foobar.pdf && rm foobar.ps
```

If you had instead used `;` and `ps2pdf` failed, the PostScript file would still end up in nowheresville, leaving you with to start over.

Now are you convinced that `&&` is often the better way to go? If there's no danger that you might delete a file, `;` might be fine, but if one of your commands involves `rm` or something else from where there is no recovery, you'd better use `&&` safe.

## Run a Command Only If the Previous One Fails

`||`

The `&&` runs each command in sequence only if the previous one completes successfully. The `||` does the opposite: If the first command fails (technically, it returns an exit status that is not 0), only then does the second one run. Think of it like the words either/or: either run the first command or the second one.

The `||` is often used to send an alert to an administrator when a process stops. For instance, to ensure that a particular computer is up and running, an administrator might constantly query it with the `ping` command (you'll find out more about `ping` in [Chapter 14](#), "Connectivity"); if `ping` fails, an email is sent to the administrator to let him know.

```
ping -c 1 -w 15 -n 72.14.203.104 ||
{
    echo "Server down" | mail -s 'Server down' admin@google.com
}
```

Note

Wondering what the `|` is? Look ahead in this chapter to the ["Use the Output of One Command As Input for Another"](#) section to find out what it is and how to use it.

With just a bit of thought, you'll start to find many places where `||` can help you. It's a powerful tool that can really prove useful.

## Plug the Output of a Command into Another Command

`$()`

Command substitution takes the output of a command and plugs it in to another command as though you had typed that output in directly. Surround the initial command that's run with the one that's going to produce the output that's plugged in with `$()`. An example makes this much clearer.

Let's say you just arrived home from a family dinner, connected your digital camera to your Linux box, pulled the new photos off of it, and now you want to put them in a folder named today's date.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/photos/family
$ ls -lF
2005-11-01/
2005-11-09/
2005-11-15/
$ date "+%Y-%m-%d"
2005-11-24
$ mkdir $(date "+%Y-%m-%d")
$ ls -lF
2005-11-01/
2005-11-09/
2005-11-15/
2005-11-24/
```

In this example, `date "+%Y-%m-%d"` is run first, and then the output of that command, `2005-11-24`, is used by `mkdir` as the name of the new directory. This is powerful stuff, and as you look at the shell scripts written by others (which you can easily find all over the Web) you'll find that command substitution is used all over the place.

#### Note

In the past, you were supposed to surround the initial command with backticks, the ``` character at the upper left of your keyboard. Now, however, you're better advised to use the characters used in this section: `$ ( )`.

## Understand Input/Output Streams

To take advantage of the information in this chapter, you need to understand that there are three input/output streams for a Linux shell: standard input, standard output, and standard error. Each of these streams has a file descriptor (or numeric identifier), a common abbreviation, and a usual default.

For instance, when you're typing on your keyboard, you're sending input to standard input, abbreviated as `stdin` and identified as `0`. When your computer presents output on the terminal, that's standard output, abbreviated as `stdout` and identified as `1`. Finally, if your machine needs to let you know about an error and displays that error on the terminal, that's standard error, abbreviated as `stderr` and identified as `2`.

Let's look at these three streams using a common command, `ls`. When you enter `ls` on your keyboard, that's using `stdin`. After typing `ls` and pressing Enter, the list of files and folders in a directory appears as `stdout`. If you try to run `ls` against a folder that doesn't exist, the error message that appears on your terminal is courtesy of `stderr`.

Table 4.1 can help you keep these three streams straight.

**Table 4.1. The Three Input/Output Streams**  
File Descriptor (Identifier)

	Name	Common Abbreviation	Typical Default
0	Standard input	stdin	Keyboard
1	Standard output	stdout	Terminal
2	Standard error	stderr	Terminal

In this chapter, we're going to learn how to redirect input and output. Instead of having output appear on the terminal, for instance, you can redirect it to another program. Or instead of acquiring input from your typing, a program can get it from a file. After you understand the tricks you can play with `stdin` and `stdout`, there are many powerful things you can do.

## Use the Output of One Command As Input for Another

|

It's a maxim that Unix is made up of small pieces, loosely joined. Nothing embodies that principle more than the concept of pipes. A pipe is the `|` symbol on your keyboard, and when placed between two commands, it takes the output from the first and uses it as input for the second. In other words, `|` redirects `stdout` so it is sent to be `stdin` for the next command.

Here's a simple example that helps to make this concept clear. You already know about `ls`, and you're going to find out about the `less` command in [Chapter 5, "Viewing Files."](#) For now, know that `less` allows you to page through text files one screen at a time. If you run `ls` on a directory that has many files, such as `/usr/bin`, things just zoom by too fast to read. If you pipe the output of `ls` to `less`, however, you can page through the output one screen at a time.

```
$ pwd
/usr/bin
$ ls -l

zipinfo
zipnote
zipsplit
zsoelim
zxpdf
[Listing truncated due to length - 2318 lines!]
$ ls -l | less
411toppm
7z
7za
822-date
a2p
```

You see one screen of results at a time when you pipe the results of `ls -l` through to `less`, which makes it much easier to work with.

Here's a more advanced example that uses two commands discussed later: `ps` and `grep`. You'll learn in [Chapter 9, "Finding Stuff: Easy,"](#) that `ps` lists running processes and in [Chapter 12, "Monitoring System Resources,"](#) that `grep` helps find lines in files that match a pattern. Let's say that Firefox is acting strange, and you suspect that multiple copies are still running in the background. The `ps` command lists every process running on your computer, but the output tends to be lengthy and flashes by in an instant. If you pipe the output of `ps` to `grep` and search for `firefox`, you'll be able to tell immediately if Firefox in fact is still running.

#### Note

In order to save space in this listing, I removed the owner, which in every instance was the same person.

```
[View full width]$ ps ux
1504  0.8  4.4 75164 46124 ? S Nov20 1:19 kontakt
19003 0.0  0.1  3376  1812 pts/4 S+ 00:02 0:00 ssh admin@david.hartley.com
21176 0.0  0.0      0      0 ? Z 00:14 0:00 [wine-preloader] <defunct>
24953 0.4  3.3 51856 34140 ? S 00:33 0:08 kdeinit: kword /home/scott/documents/clientele
/current
[Listing truncated for length]
$ ps ux | grep firefox
scott 8272  4.7 10.9 184072 112704 ? Sl Nov19 76:45 /opt/firefox/firefox-bin
```

From 58 lines of output to onenow that's much easier to read!

#### Note

Keep in mind that many programs can work with pipes, but not all. The text editor `vim` (or `pico`, `nano`, or `emacs`), for instance, takes over the entire shell so that all input from the keyboard is assumed to be directed at `vim`, while all output is displayed somewhere in the program. Because `vim` has total control of the shell, you can't pipe output using the program. You'll learn to recognize non-pipable programs as you use the shell over time.

## Redirect a Command's Output to a File

>

Normally, output goes to your screen, otherwise known as `stdout`. If you don't want output to go to the screen and instead want it to be placed into a file, use the `>` (greater than) character.



```
$ pwd
/home/scott/music
$ ls -lF
Hank_Mobley/
Horace_Silver/
John_Coltrane/
$ ls -lF Hank_Mobley/* > hank_mobley.txt
$ cat hank_mobley.txt
1958_Peckin'_Time/
1960_Roll_Call/
1960_Soul_Station/
1961_Workout/
1963_No_Room_For_Squares/

$ ls -lF
Hank_Mobley/
hank_mobley.txt
Horace_Silver/
John_Coltrane/
```

Notice that before you used the `>`, the file `hank_mobley.txt` didn't exist. When you use `>` and redirect to a file that doesn't already exist, that file is created. Here's the big warning: If `hank_mobley.txt` had already existed, it would have been completely overwritten.

### Caution

Once again: Be careful when using redirection, as you could potentially destroy the contents of a file that contains important stuff!

## Prevent Overwriting Files When Using Redirection

There's a way to prevent overwriting files when redirecting, however the `noclobber` option. If you set `noclobber` to on, `bash` won't allow redirection to overwrite existing files without your explicit permission. To turn on `noclobber`, use this command:

```
$ set -o noclobber
```

At that point, if you want to use redirection and overwrite a file, use `>|` instead of just `>`, like this:

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/music
$ ls -lF
Hank_Mobley/
hank_mobley.txt
Horace_Silver/
John_Coltrane/
$ ls -lF Hank_Mobley/* > hank_mobley.txt
ERROR
$ ls -lF Hank_Mobley/* >| hank_mobley.txt
$ cat hank_mobley.txt
```

```
1958_Peckin'_Time/  
1960_Roll_Call/  
1960_Soul_Station/  
1961_Workout/  
1963_No_Room_For_Squares/
```

If you decide you don't like or need `noclobber`, you can turn it off again:

```
$ set +o noclobber
```

To permanently turn on `noclobber`, you need to add `set -o noclobber` to your `.bashrc` file.

## Append a Command's Output to a File

>>

As you learned previously, the `>` character redirects output from `stdout` to a file. For instance, you can redirect the output of the `date` command to a file easily enough:

```
$ date  
Mon Nov 21 21:33:58 CST 2005  
$ date > hank_mobley.txt  
$ cat hank_mobley.txt  
Mon Nov 21 21:33:58 CST 2005
```

Remember that `>` creates a new file if it doesn't already exist and overwrites a file that already exists. If you use `>>` instead of `>`, however, your output is appended to the bottom of the named file (and yes, if the file doesn't exist, it's created).

```
$ cat hank_mobley.txt  
Mon Nov 21 21:33:58 CST 2005  
$ ls -lF Hank_Mobley/* >> hank_mobley.txt  
$ cat hank_mobley.txt  
Mon Nov 21 21:33:58 CST 2005  
1958_Peckin'_Time/  
1960_Roll_Call/  
1960_Soul_Station/  
1961_Workout/  
1963_No_Room_For_Squares/
```

### Caution

Be careful with `>>`. If you accidentally type `>` instead, you won't append, you'll overwrite!

## Use a File As Input for a Command

<

Normally your keyboard provides input to commands, so it is termed `stdin`. In the same way that you can redirect `stdout` to a file, you can redirect `stdin` so it comes from a file instead of a keyboard. Why is this handy? Some commands can't open files directly, and in those cases, the `<` (lesser than) is just what you need.

For instance, normally the `echo` command repeats what you type on `stdin`, as shown here:

```
$ echo "This will be repeated"
This will be repeated.
```

However, you can use the `<` to redirect input, and the `echo` command uses the contents of a file instead of `stdin`. In this case, let's use the `hank_mobley.txt` file created in the previous section.

```
$ echo < hank_mobley.txt
Mon Nov 21 21:33:58 CST 2005
1958_Peckin_Time/
1960_Roll_Call/
1960_Soul_Station/
1961_Workout/
1963_No_Room_For_Squares/
```

You're not going to use the `<` all the time, but it will be exactly what you need in a number of situations, so keep it in mind.

## Conclusion

This book started with some simple commands, but now you've learned the building blocks that allow you to combine those commands in new and interesting ways. Going forward, it's going to get more complicated, but it's going to get more powerful as well. The things covered in this chapter are a key factor in gaining that power. Now, onward!



# Part II: Working with Files

[Chapter 5. Viewing Files](#)

[Chapter 6. Printing and Managing Print Jobs](#)

[Chapter 7. Ownerships and Permissions](#)

[Chapter 8. Archiving and Compression](#)

## Chapter 5. Viewing Files

One of the great things about most Linux boxes is that virtually all important system configurations, logs, and information files are in ASCII text format. Because ASCII is a well-supported, ancient (in computer terms) standard, there's a wealth of software commands you can use to view the contents of those text files. This chapter looks at four commands you'll use constantly when reading ASCII text files.

### View Files on stdout

#### **cat**

DOS users have the `type` command that displays the contents of text files on a screen. Linux users can use `cat`, which does the same thing. Want to view a file in the shell? Try `cat`.

```
$ cat Hopkins_-_The_Windhover.txt
I caught this morning morning's minion, kingdom
of daylight's dauphin, dapple-dawn-drawn Falcon, in his riding
  Of the rolling level underneath him steady air, and striding
High there, how he rung upon the rein of a wimpling wing
In his ecstasy! then off, off forth on swing,
  As a skate's heel sweeps smooth on a bow-bend: the hurl and gliding
  Rebuffed the big wind. My heart in hiding
Stirred for a bird, -- the achieve of, the mastery of the thing!

Brute beauty and valour and act, oh, air, pride, plume, here
  Buckle! AND the fire that breaks from thee then, a billion

Times told lovelier, more dangerous, o my chevalier!
  No wonder of it: sheer plod makes plough down
sillion
Shine, and blue-bleak embers, ah my dear,
  Fall, gall themselves, and gash gold-vermilion.
$
```

The `cat` command prints the file to the screen, and then deposits you back at the command prompt. If the file is longer than your screen, you need to scroll up to see what flashed by.

That's the big problem with `cat`: If the document you're viewing is long, it zooms by, maybe for quite a while, making it hard to read (can you imagine what this would produce: `cat Melville_-_Moby_Dick.txt`?). The solution to that is the `less` command, discussed in "[View Text Files a Screen at a Time](#)" later in this chapter.

## Concatenate Files to stdout

```
cat file1 file2
```

`cat` is short for concatenate, which means "to join together." The original purpose of `cat` is to take two or more files and concatenate them into one file (the fact that you can use the `cat` command on just one file and print it on the screen is a bonus). For instance, let's say you have a short poem by A. E. Housman and one by Francis Quarles, and you want to view them at the same time.

```
$ cat housman_-_rue.txt quarles_-_the_world.txt
WITH rue my heart is laden
  For golden friends I had,
For many a rose-lipt maiden
  And many a lightfoot lad.
By brooks too broad for leaping
  The lightfoot boys are laid;
The rose-lipt girls are sleeping
  In fields where roses fade.
The world's an Inn; and I her guest.
I eat; I drink; I take my rest.
My hostess, nature, does deny me
Nothing, wherewith she can supply me;
Where, having stayed a while, I pay
Her lavish bills, and go my way.
```

Notice that `cat` doesn't separate the two files with a horizontal rule, a dash, or so forth. Instead, `cat` mashes the two files together and spits them out. If you want more of a separation, having the last line of "With rue my heart is laden" jammed up right next to the first line of "On the world" makes them hard to read, for instance, make sure there's a blank line at the end of each file you're going to concatenate together.

## Concatenate Files to Another File

```
cat file1 file2 > file3
```

In the previous example, you concatenated two files and printed them on the screen to `stdout`. This might not be what you want, though. If you're concatenating two files, it might be nice to save the newly joined creation as another file you can use. To do this, redirect your output from `stdout` to a file, as you learned in [Chapter 4, "Building Blocks."](#)

```
$ ls
housman_-_rue.txt quarles_-_the_world.txt
$ cat housman_-_rue.txt quarles_-_the_world.txt > poems.txt$ ls
```

```
housman_-_rue.txt poems.txt quarles_-_the_world.txt
```

Now you can do whatever you want with `poems.txt`. If you want to add more poems to it, that's easy enough to do:

```
$ cat housman_-_one-and-twenty.txt >> poems.txt
```

Notice that the `>>` was used to append the new poem to `poems.txt` this time. The following command would not have worked:

```
$ cat housman_-_one-and-twenty.txt poems.txt > poems.txt
```

If you tried concatenating a file to itself, you'd see this error message, helpfully explaining that it is impossible to fulfill your request:

```
cat: poems.txt: input file is output file
```

## Concatenate Files and Number the Lines

```
cat -n file1 file2
```

When working with poems and source code, it's really nice to have numbered lines so that references are clear. If you want to generate line numbers when you use `cat`, add the `-n` option (or `--number`).

```
$ cat -n housman_-_rue.txt quarles_-_the_world.txt
 1 WITH rue my heart is laden
 2   For golden friends I had,
 3   For many a rose-lipt maiden
 4   And many a lightfoot lad.
 5 By brooks too broad for leaping
 6   The lightfoot boys are laid;
 7 The rose-lipt girls are sleeping
 8   In fields where roses fade.
 9 The world's an Inn; and I her guest.
10 I eat; I drink; I take my rest.
11 My hostess, nature, does deny me
12 Nothing, wherewith she can supply me;
13 Where, having stayed a while, I pay
14 Her lavish bills, and go my way.
```

Line numbers can be incredibly useful, and `cat` provides a quick and dirty way to add them to a file.

Note

For a vastly better `cat`, check out `dog` (more information is available at <http://opensource.weblogsinc.com/2005/02/17/why-dogs-are-betters-than-cats>). Instead of local files, you can use `dog` to view the HTML source of web pages on `stdout`, or just a list of images or links on the specified web pages. The `dog` command converts all characters to lowercase or vice versa; converts line endings to Mac OS, DOS, or Unix; and even allows you to specify a range of characters to output (lines 525, for instance). Not to mention, the `man` page for `dog` is one of the funniest ever. This is one dog that knows a lot of new tricks!

And here's another program that was created in response to `cat`: `tac`. Yes, that's `cat` backward. And that's what `tac` does: It concatenates files backward. That's not something you'll use all the time, but when you do need that functionality, it's nice to know that it's easily available.

## View Text Files a Screen at a Time

### `less file1`

The `cat` command is useful, but if you're trying to read a long file, it's not useful at all because text just flows past in an unending, unreadable stream. If you're interested in viewing a long file on the command line (and by "long," think more than a page or two), you don't want `cat`; you want `less`.

The `less` command is an example of a pager, a program that displays text files one page at a time. Others are `more`, `pg`, and `most`; in fact, `less` was released back in 1985 as an improved `more`, proving once again that less is more!

Opening a file with `less` even an enormous one like Milton's *Paradise Lost* couldn't be easier:

```
$ less Paradise_Lost.txt
```

The `less` command takes over your entire screen, so you have to navigate within `less` using your keyboard, and you have to quit `less` to get back to the command line. To navigate inside `less`, use the keys in [Table 5.1](#):

**Table 5.1. Key Commands for `less`**

Key Command	Action
PageDn, e, or spacebar	Forward one page
PageUp or b	Back one page
Return, e, j, or down arrow	Forward one line
y, k, or up arrow	Back one line
G or p	Forward to end of file
1G	Back to beginning of file



Esc-), or right arrow  
 Esc-(, or left arrow  
 Q

Scroll right  
 Scroll left  
 Quit less

As you can see, you have many options for most commands. Probably the two you'll use most often are those used to move down a page at a time and quit the program.

To view information about the file while you're in `less`, press `=`, which displays some data at the very bottom of your screen similar to the following:

```
Paradise_Lost.txt lines 7521-7560/10762 byte 166743/237306 70% (press RETURN)
```

As you can see, you're helpfully told to press Enter to get rid of the data and go back to using `less`.

In the same way that you could tell `cat` to stick in line numbers for a file, you can also order `less` to display line numbers. Those numbers only appear, of course, while you're using `less`. After you press `q`, the numbers are gone. To view the file, but with numbers at the start of each line, start `less` with the `-N` (or `--LINE-NUMBERS`) option, and yes, you must use all caps:

```
$ less -N Paradise_Lost.txt
```

## Search Within Your Pager

If you're using `less` to view a large file or an especially dense one, it can be difficult to find the text in which you're particularly interested. For instance, what if you want to know if Milton uses the word `apple` in *Paradise Lost* to describe the fruit that Adam and Eve ate? While in `less`, press `/` and then type in the pattern for which you'd like to search and you can even use regular expressions if you'd like. After your pattern is in place, press Enter and `less` jumps to the first instance of your search pattern, if it exists. If your pattern isn't in the file, `less` tells you that:

```
Pattern not found (press RETURN)
```

Repeating your search is also easy and can be done either forward or backward in your file.

[Table 5.2](#) covers the main commands you need for searching within `less`.

**Table 5.2. Search Commands for `less`**

Key Command	Action
<code>/pattern</code>	Search forward for pattern using regex
<code>n</code>	Repeat search

N

forward  
Repeat  
search  
backward

Note

No, Milton never explicitly refers to the fruit as an apple; instead, it's just a "fruit." Yes, I worked on a doctorate in Seventeenth Century British Literature for a number of years. No, I didn't finish it, which explains why I'm writing this book and not one solely devoted to John Milton and Restoration literature.

## Edit Files Viewed with a Pager

It's true that `less` itself is not an editor, just a viewer, but you can pass the file you're viewing with `less` to a text editor such as `vim` or `nano` for editing by pressing `v`. Try it. View a file with `less`, and then press `v`. Within a second or two, `less` disappears and a full-screen text editor takes its place. Make your edits, quit your editor, and you're back in `less` with your new changes in place.

If you aren't happy with the editor that you find yourself in when you press `v`, you can change it to one of your choice. For instance, if you want to use `vim`, run the following command before using `less`:

```
$ export EDITOR=vim
```

You only need to run that command once per session, and every time you open `less` after that, `vim` will be your editor. If you end the session, however, you'll need to enter the `export` command again, which can quickly grow tedious. Better to add the following line to your `.bashrc` file, so that it's automatically applied:

```
export EDITOR=vim
```

## View the First 10 Lines of a File

### **head**

If you just need to see the first 10 lines of a file, such as Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*, there's no need to use either `cat` or `less`. Instead, use the `head` command, which prints out exactly the first 10 lines of a file and then deposits you back on the command line.

```
$ head Canterbury_Tales.txt
Here bygynneth the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury

General Prologue
```

```

Whan that Aprill, with his shoures soote
The droghte of March hath perced to the roote
And bathed every veyne in swich licour,
Of which vertu engendred is the flour;
Whan Zephirus eek with his sweete breeth
Inspired hath in every holt and heeth
$

```

The `head` command is great for quick glances at a text file, even if that file is enormous. In just a second, you see enough to know if it's the file you need or not.

## View the First 10 Lines of Several Files

### `head file1 file2`

You can use `head` to view the first 10 lines of several files at one time. This sounds a bit similar to `cat`, and it is, except that `head` helpfully provides a header that separates the files so it's clear which one is which. Here's the first ten lines of Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* and Milton's *Paradise Lost*.

```

$ head Canterbury_Tales.txt Paradise_Lost.txt
==> Canterbury_Tales.txt <==
Here bygynneth the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury

General Prologue

Whan that Aprill, with his shoures soote
The droghte of March hath perced to the roote
And bathed every veyne in swich licour,
Of which vertu engendred is the flour;
Whan Zephirus eek with his sweete breeth
Inspired hath in every holt and heeth

==> Paradise_Lost.txt <==
Book I

Of Man's first disobedience, and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree whose mortal taste
Brought death into the World, and all our woe,
With loss of Eden, till one greater Man
Restore us, and regain the blissful seat,
Sing, Heavenly Muse, that, on the secret top
Of Oreb, or of Sinai, didst inspire
That shepherd who first taught the chosen seed

```

The `head` command automatically separates the two excerpts with a space and then a header, which really makes it easy to see the different files clearly.

## View the First Several Lines of a File or Files

If you don't want to see the first 10 lines of a file, you can tell `head` to show you a different number of lines by using the `-n` option followed by a number such as 5 (or `--lines=5`). If you specify two or more files, such as Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* and Milton's *Paradise Lost*, the results show all the files.

```
$ head -n 5 Canterbury_Tales.txt Paradise_Lost.txt
==> Canterbury_Tales.txt <==
Here bygynne the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury

General Prologue

Whan that Aprill, with his shoures soote

==> Paradise_Lost.txt <==
Book I

Of Man's first disobedience, and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree whose mortal taste
Brought death into the World, and all our woe,
```

Notice that the five lines include blank lines as well as those with text. Five lines are five lines, no matter what those lines contain.

## View the First Several Bytes, Kilobytes, or Megabytes of a File

### `head -c`

The `-n` option allows you to specify the number of lines you view at the top of a file, but what if you want to see a certain number of bytes? Or kilobytes? Or even (and this is a bit silly because it would scroll on forever) megabytes? Then use the `-c` (or `--bytes=`) option.

To see the first 100 bytes of Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*, you'd use this:

```
$ head -c 100 Canterbury_Tales.txt
Here bygynne the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury
General Prologue

Whan that Aprill, with his sh
```

100 bytes means 100 bytes, and if that means the display is cut off in the middle of a word, so be it.

To view the first 100KB of Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*, you'd use this:

```
$ head -c 100k Canterbury_Tales.txt
Here bygynne the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury

General Prologue

Whan that Aprill, with his shoures soote
The droghte of March hath perced to the roote
```

```
And bathed every veyne in swich licour,  
Of which vertu engendred is the flour;  
Whan Zephirus eek with his sweete breeth  
Inspired hath in every holt and heeth
```

And to view the first 100MB of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, you'd use...no, that would take up the rest of the book! But if you wanted to do it, try this:

```
$ head -c 100m Canterbury_Tales.txt
```

The m here means 1048576 bytes, or 1024 x 1024.

## View the Last 10 Lines of a File

### **tail**

The `head` command allows you to view the first 10 lines of a file, and in typical whimsical Unix fashion, the `tail` command allows you to view the last 10 lines of a file. From `head` to `tail`, get it?

```
$ tail Paradise_Lost.txt  
To the subjected plain - then disappeared  
They, looking back, all the eastern side beheld  
Of Paradise, so late their happy seat,  
Waved over by that flaming brand; the gate  
With dreadful faces thronged and fiery arms.  
Some natural tears they dropped, but wiped them soon;  
The world was all before them, where to choose  
Their place of rest, and Providence their guide.  
They, hand in hand, with wandering steps and slow,  
Through Eden took their solitary way.
```

Why use `tail`? Most often, to view the end of a log file to see what's going on with an application or your system. Of course, there's an important option you want to use in that case, as you'll learn in the upcoming ["View the Constantly Updated Last Lines of a File or Files"](#) section.

## View the Last 10 Lines of Several Files

### **tail file1 file2**

You can view the first 10 lines of several files at one time using `head`; unsurprisingly, you can do the same thing with `tail`.

```
$ tail Paradise_Lost.txt Miller's_Tale.txt  
==> Paradise_Lost.txt <==
```

```

To the subjected plain - then disappeared
They, looking back, all the eastern side beheld
Of Paradise, so late their happy seat,
Waved over by that flaming brand; the gate
With dreadful faces thronged and fiery arms.
Some natural tears they dropped, but wiped them soon;
The world was all before them, where to choose
Their place of rest, and Providence their guide.
They, hand in hand, with wandering steps and slow,
Through Eden took their solitary way.
==> Miller's_Tale.txt <==
With othes grete he was so sworn adoun
That he was holde wood in al the toun;
For every clerk anonright heeld with oother.
They seyde, "The man is wood, my leeve brother";
And every wight gan laughen at this stryf.
Thus swyved was this carpenteris wyf,
For al his kepyng and his jalousye;
And Absolon hath kist hir nether ye;
And Nicholas is scalded in the towte.
This tale is doon, and God save al the rowte!

```

Also like `head`, `tail` includes a header/separator between the entries, which is helpful.

## View the Last Several Lines of a File or Files

### `tail -n`

Continuing the similarities between `head` and `tail`, you can specify the number of a file's lines you want to see instead of accepting the default of 10 by utilizing the `-n` (or `--lines=`) option. Want to see more than one file? Just add it to your command.

```

$ tail -n 4 Paradise_Lost.txt Miller's_Tale.txt
==> Paradise_Lost.txt <==
The world was all before them, where to choose
Their place of rest, and Providence their guide.
They, hand in hand, with wandering steps and slow,
Through Eden took their solitary way.
==> Miller's_Tale.txt <==
For al his kepyng and his jalousye;
And Absolon hath kist hir nether ye;
And Nicholas is scalded in the towte.
This tale is doon, and God save al the rowte!

```

Do you have more than one log file that you want to view? Then this is a useful command. But it's still not perfect. For the perfect command, read the next section.

## View the Constantly Updated Last Lines of a File or Files

```
tail -f
tail -f --pid=PID# terminates after PID dies.
```

The great thing about log files is that they constantly change as things happen on your system. The `tail` command shows you a snapshot of a file, and then deposits you back on the command line. Want to see the log file again? Then run `tail` again...and again...and again. Blech!

With the `-f` (or `--follow`) option, `tail` doesn't close. Instead, it shows you the last 10 lines of the file (or a different number if you add `-n` to the mix) as the file changes, giving you a way to watch all the changes to a log file as they happen. This is wonderfully useful if you're trying to figure out just what is happening to a system or program.

For instance, a web server's logs might look like this:

#### Note

In order to save space, I've removed the IP address, date, and time of the access.

```
$ tail -f /var/log/httpd/d20srd_org_log_20051201
"GET /srd/skills/bluff.htm HTTP/1.1"...
"GET /srd/skills/senseMotive.htm HTTP/1.1"...
"GET /srd/skills/concentration.htm HTTP/1.1"...
"GET /srd/classes/monk.htm HTTP/1.1"...
"GET /srd/skills/escapeArtist.htm HTTP/1.1"..."
```

It's hard to represent in a book, but this file doesn't close. Instead, `tail` keeps it open, and makes sure that any new changes are shown. The file continues to scroll up, apparently forever or until you press `Ctrl+c`, which cancels the command and deposits you back on the command line.

Try it with one of your log files, such as `/var/log/syslog`. Add in the `q` option to see only a certain number of lines to begin with, and then try it with two files, such as `/var/log/syslog` and `/var/log/daemon.log`, and see what happens (hint: It's remarkably similar to what you saw in "[View the First 10 Lines of Several Files](#)," but with constant updates).

## Conclusion

You've looked at four commands in this chapter: `cat`, `less`, `head`, and `tail`. They all show you text files in read-only mode, but they do so in different ways. The `cat` command shows you the whole file all at once, while `less` allows you to page through a file one screen at a time. The `head` and `tail` commands are two sides of the same coin, rather, the same file as the former enables you to view the beginning of a file and the latter displays the end. Together, these four commands make it easy to view just about any part of a text file that you might need to see.

## Chapter 6. Printing and Managing Print Jobs

Over the years, Linux has had several printing systems, including the venerable Line Printer Daemon (LPD) and LPR Next Generation (LPRng) that are still found in vestigial form on modern Linux distributions. In the past few years, however, most distributions have settled on the Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) as their backend of choice. CUPS is well supported, easy to use, modern, and a perfect drop-in replacement for LPD and LPRng. The same commands used with LPD and LPRng still work, but now they call functions in CUPS.

This chapter focuses on CUPS because it is the printing system with which most Linux users work. This chapter does not cover how to set up and configure a printer. Most distributions now provide easy-to-use GUI configuration tools to do just that, so you're going to focus on actually querying and using the printer via the command line.

### Note

Linux Journal's "Overview of Linux Printing Systems," available at [www.linuxjournal.com/article/6729](http://www.linuxjournal.com/article/6729), provides an excellent look at the various options Linux users have today, with special focus on the current favorite, CUPS. For more on CUPS, see Linux Journal's "The CUPS Printing System" at [www.linuxjournal.com/article/8618](http://www.linuxjournal.com/article/8618), a very good look at this essential technology. The best place to go for information about CUPS is, unsurprisingly, the CUPS Software Users Manual, which you can find at [www.cups.org/doc-1.1/sum.html](http://www.cups.org/doc-1.1/sum.html). It's long and sometimes obtuse, but full of valuable advice and help, and it's an essential resource.

## List All Available Printers

### **lpstat -p**

Before you can begin working with your printers, you need to know what makes up "your printers." To find the printers configured on your system, use the `lpstat` command (short for line printer status) along with the `-p` option.

```
$ lpstat -p
printer bro is idle. enabled since Jan 01 00:00
printer bro_wk is idle. enabled since Jan 01 00:00
printer wu is idle. enabled since Jan 01 00:00
```

As you can see, this system has three printers `bro`, `bro_websanity`, and `wu_eads14` and none of them are printing anything at the moment.

## Determine Your Default Printer



## **lpstat -d**

You know all of your printers, thanks to running `lpstat -p`, but which one is the default? As you're going to see soon, you can send a print job to a specific printer, or you can quickly send it to your default printer. To find out which printer is the default, use the `lpstat` command with the `-d` (for default) option.

```
$ lpstat -d
system default destination: bro
```

Of course, if you only have one printer connected to your computer, you probably don't need to run this command. But for laptop users who move around to different locations and who print to different printers, this command is essential.

## **Find Out How Your Printers Are Connected**

### **lpstat -s**

Laptop users find this next command particularly helpful, as it tells them how they access the printers available to them.

When you first set up a printer, you must specify how you connect to it. You have several choices:

- Local (parallel, serial, or USB)
- Remote LPD queue
- SMB shared printer (Windows)
- Network printer (TCP)
- Remote CUPS server (IPP/HTTP)
- Network printer with IPP (IPP/HTTP)

To find out what printers are configured for your computer and how you connect to those printers, use `lpstat` with the `-s` option.

```
$ lpstat -s
system default destination: bro
device for bro: socket://192.168.0.160:9100
device for bro_wk: socket://192.168.1.10:9100
device for wu: socket://128.252.93.10:9100
```

In this case, every printer is a network printer, so it uses `socket://`, followed by the printer's IP address and its port (9100 is standard for most networked printers, although you might see port 35 used as well). That's pretty easy, but it can quickly get much more complicated.

Although CUPS is user-friendly in many areas, it's famously obtuse when it comes to the Uniform Resource Indicators

(URIs) used to indicate the locations of printers vis-à-vis your Linux box. [Table 6.1](#) lists each connection method and the type of URI you might see, which should help you understand the list of printers and URIs you see when you run `lpstat -s`.

#### Note

Assume that the printer in the following examples is named `bro` and located on the network at 192.168.0.160. That isn't relevant in every situation, of course. If the printer is connected via a parallel cable, its IP address doesn't matter.

**Table 6.1. Printer Connections and CUPS URIs**

Connection Method	Sample URI (Printer <code>bro</code> at 192.168.0.160)
Parallel	<code>parallel:/dev/lp0</code>
Serial	<code>serial:/dev/ttyS1?baud=115200</code>
USB	<code>usb:/dev/usb/lp0</code>
Remote LPD queue	<code>lpd://192.168.0.160/LPT1</code>
SMB shared printer (Windows)	<code>smb://username:password@192.168.0.160/bro</code>
Network printer (TCP)	<code>socket://192.168.0.160:9100</code>
Remote CUPS server (IPP/HTTP)	<code>ipp://192.168.0.160:631/printers/bro,</code> <code>http://192.168.0.160/printers/bro</code>
Network printer with IPP (IPP/HTTP)	<code>ipp://192.168.0.160:631/printers/bro,</code> <code>http://192.168.0.160/printers/bro</code>

Thanks to the rise of network printing in the past several years, it's getting simpler to connect to printers via `socket`, `ipp`, or `http`. Even so, you're still going to run into legacy printers that require the older, more complicated connection methods, so it's good to familiarize yourself with them.

#### Tip

A bonus is that `lpstat -s` in essence duplicates the functionality of `lpstat -p -d`, as it lists all printers known by your system, as well as the default printer. If you want to know all that information quickly, this is a good command to use.

## Get All the Information About Your Printers at Once

### `lpstat -t`

Now for the mighty command. The nice thing about using `lpstat -p`, `lpstat -d`, or `lpstat -s` is that you only get the precise bit of information you want. If you want everything all at once, however, use

`lpstat` with the `-t` option, which dumps everything `lpstat` knows about your printers onto your shell.

```
$ lpstat -t
scheduler is running
system default destination: bro
device for bro: socket://192.168.0.160:9100
device for bro_wk: socket://192.168.1.10:9100
device for wu: socket://128.252.93.10:9100
bro accepting requests since Jan 01 00:00
bro_wk accepting requests since Jan 01 00:00
wu accepting requests since Jan 01 00:00
printer bro is idle. enabled since Jan 01 00:00
printer bro_wk is idle. enabled since Jan 01 00:00
printer wu is idle. enabled since Jan 01 00:00
```

You get it all: your default printer, a list of all printers known to your system, the connection methods and locations of those printers, and the status of all printers. The more printers you have configured on your computer, the longer this listing. For some of you, it will be overwhelming, so you might find that `lpstat` with one of the other options you've examined is a better choice.

## Print Files to the Default Printer

### `lpr`

Now that you know what printers are on your system, it's time to actually use them to print something. Printing to your default printer (determined with `lpstat -d`) is easy.

```
$ lpr Lovecraft_-_Call_of_Cthulhu.txt
```

That's it: Just `lpr` and the name of the text file. Pretty simple.

### Note

You probably expect that you can print ASCII text files on the command line using CUPS, but it might surprise you to learn that you can also print PDFs or PostScript files. But that's it; don't try to print Word, OpenOffice.org, or any other kind of non-text-based or non-PostScript-based documents, or your printer will spew out pages of garbage!

## Print Files to Any Printer

## **lpr -P**

Printing to the default printer, as shown in the previous section, is pretty easy. If you have more than one printer, however, and you want to print to one that is not the default, simply use the `-P` option, followed by the name of the printer.

```
$ lpr -P bro_wk Lovecraft_-_Call_of_Cthulhu.txt
```

If you don't know the names of your printers, use `lpstat -p`, as discussed previously in the "[List All Available Printers](#)" section.

### Note

You'll notice that the filename has underscores instead of spaces, which makes it much easier to deal with on the command line. If the filename has spaces in it, you have to use one of the following methods for referencing it:

```
$ lpr -P bro_wk "Lovecraft - Call of Cthulhu.txt"
```

or

```
$ lpr -P bro_wk Lovecraft\ -\ Call\ of\ Cthulhu.txt
```

If the filename does have spaces, it's probably easiest to use tab completion so you don't have to type out the name yourself. For instance, you'd enter `lpr -P bro_wk Love` and then press the Tab key, allowing bash to finish the filename. For more on tab completion, see [www.slackbook.org/html/shell-bash.html#SHELL-BASH-TAB](http://www.slackbook.org/html/shell-bash.html#SHELL-BASH-TAB).

## **Print More Than One Copy of a File**

### **lpr -#**

If you want to print more than one copy of document, use the `-#` (the pound sign) option, followed by the number of copies you want:

```
$ lpr -# 2 -P bro Lovecraft_-_Call_of_Cthulhu.txt
```

The number can range from 1 to 100. Want more than 100? Repeat the command. Or write a script. Or hire a professional printer!

## List Print Jobs

### lpq

If you have several jobs queued up to print, you might want to see that list. Perhaps you want to cancel one or more of the jobs (more on how to do that ahead, in the next few sections), you want to find out why a job is taking so long to print, or maybe you just want to know how many print jobs are in line. The `lpq` command (as in "lp queue") lists all jobs currently printing on the default printer.

```
$ lpq
bro is ready and printing
Rank   Owner Job File(s)                Total Size
active scott 489 Lovecraft_-_Call_of_C 108544 bytes
```

If you want to find out the status of print queues for all your printers, not just your default, simply append `-a` (as in all) after `lpq`:

```
$ lpq -a
Rank   Owner Job File(s)                Total Size
active scott 489 Lovecraft_-_Call_of_C 108544 bytes
1st    scott 490 ERB_-_A Princess_of_M 524288 bytes
```

Keep in mind two things. First, the listing provided by `lpq -a` is cut off, so while the filenames are actually `Lovecraft_-_Call_of_Cthulhu.txt` and `ERB_-_A Princess_of_Mars.txt`, you don't see the entire name because `lpq` only shows a certain number of characters.

Second, and this is very important, `lpq` is not showing all the print jobs the printer knows about, only those that your machine knows about. From the printer's perspective, the print queue might actually look like this:

- `Lovecraft_-_Call_of_Cthulhu.txt`
- `Doyle_-_The_Lost_World.txt`
- `ERB_-_A Princess_of_Mars.txt`

To find out the actual queue on the printer, you have to use whatever management utilities come with that device, which is far beyond the scope of this book.

## List Print Jobs by Printer

### lpstat

The `lpq` command shows you the files that are queued to print, but it doesn't tell you to which printer the files are being sent. To learn that, you need to use the `lpstat` command, covered earlier in "[List All Available Printers](#)." This time, however, simply use `lpstat` without any options at all:

```
$lpstat
```

```
bro-489      rsgranne 108544 Tue 10 Dec 2005
bro_wk-490   rsgranne 524288 Tue 10 Dec 2005
```

The result is a list of print jobs, with the name of each printer handling the job at the beginning of each line. Did you accidentally send a job to a printer to which you're not currently connected? Find out with `lpstat` and then delete the job, which you'll learn in the next section.

## Cancel the Current Print Job Sent to the Default Printer

### `lprm`

Do you want to cancel the current print job being sent to your default printer? Just use `lprm` (as in "lp remove"):

```
$lprm
```

Be sure to issue this command with haste. Many printers now are so fast and have so much memory that the job might have already left your machine and be running on the printer. In that case, find the Cancel button on your printer and press it quickly!

## Cancel a Print Job Sent to Any Printer

### `lprm job ID`

In the previous section, you learned how to cancel the current print job going to the default printer. But what if the job is queued and won't start for another few minutes? Or what if the job is heading for a printer that's not the default? In those cases, you want to still use `lprm`, but you want to tell the command which job to cancel by referencing the job's ID number.

Look back at the examples in "[List Print Jobs](#)." The third column is labeled "Job" and has a number in it. Now look back at "[List Print Jobs by Printer](#)." After the name of each printer is a hyphen and then a number the same number seen in "[List Print Jobs](#)." That number is the job ID number. Specify that number to `lprm`, and that exact job will be removed.

```
$ lpstat
bro-489      rsgranne 108544 Tue 10 Dec 2005
bro_wk-490   rsgranne 524288 Tue 10 Dec 2005
$ lprm 490
$lpstat
bro-489      rsgranne 108544 Tue 10 Dec 2005
```

You can really save yourself from a needless waste of paper, toner, and ink using this particular command. Next time you realize that you just sent a 500-page document full of large pictures to your printer and stop it using `lprm` and a job ID number, send an email my way and thank me.

## Cancel All Print Jobs

**lprm -**

What if you have several print jobs you want to cancel? You could delete them all by specifying all of their job ID numbers, like this:

```
$ lprm 489 490 491 492 493
```

That's too much typing, however. If you want to get rid of all print jobs you've queued on every printer, just follow `lprm` with a hyphen:

```
$ lprm -
```

It's quick, it's painless, and it's lazy in the best Linux tradition. Nothing to be ashamed of there!

## Conclusion

Printing is a central activity people perform on their computers, so it's important to learn how to print effectively. Part of printing is knowing how to query printers and jobs as well as send those jobs to printers in the first place. Of course, not all jobs need to be printed, so it's important to know how to cancel unnecessary jobs as well. This chapter covers the major tasks you'll need to work with your printers from within Linux, but let me leave you with a final bit of advice: Automatic duplex printers that work with Linux have now fallen in price drastically, and they'll help you save a small fortune in paper. Check one out when you're next in the market for a printer. You'll be glad you did.

## Chapter 7. Ownerships and Permissions

From the beginning, Linux was designed to be a multiuser system (unlike Windows, which was designed as a sole user OS, the source of much of its security problems even to this day). This meant that different users would be on the system, creating files, deleting directories, and reading various items. To keep everyone from stepping on each other's toes and damaging the underlying operating system itself, a system of permissions was created early on. Mastering the art of Linux permissions will aid you as you use your Linux box, whether it's a workstation used by one person or a server accessed by hundreds. The tools are simple, but the power they give you is complex. Time to jump in!

## Change the Group Owning Files and Directories

### chgrp

By default on virtually every Linux system, when you create a new file (or directory), you are that file's owner and group. For instance, let's say you're going to write a new script that can be run on your system.

#### Note

To save space, I've replaced information you'd normally see with `ls -l` by an ellipses.

```
$ touch new_script.sh
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... script.sh
```

#### Note

The user name and group name happen to both be "scott" on this machine, but that's not necessarily the case on every machine. When a file is created, the user's UID (her User ID number) becomes the owner of the file, while the user's GID (her Group ID number) becomes the group for the file.

But what if you are part of an `admins` group on your machine and you want your script to be available to other members of your group so they can run it? In that case, you need to change your group from `scott` to `admins` using the `chgrp` command.

```
$ chgrp admins new_script.sh
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott admins ... script.sh
```

#### Note

Yes, the script still won't run because it's not executable. That process is covered later in this chapter with `chmod`.

You should know a couple of things about `chgrp`. When you run `chgrp`, you can use a group's name or the group's numeric ID. How do you find the number associated with a group? The easiest way is just to use `cat` on `/etc/group`, the file that keeps track of groups on your machine, and then take a look at the results.

```
$ cat /etc/group
bind:x:118:
scott:x:1001:
admins:x:1002:scott,alice,bob
```



```
[list truncated for length]
```

The other point to make about `chgrp` involves security: You can only change permissions for a group if you are a member of that group. In other words, Scott, Alice, or Bob can use `chgrp` to make `admins` a group for a file or directory, but Carol cannot because she's not a member of `admins`.

## Recursively Change the Group Owning a Directory

### `chgrp -R`

Of course, you might not want to change the group of just one file or directory. If you want to change the groups of several files in a directory, you can use a wildcard. If you want to change the contents of a directory and everything below it, use the `-R` (or `--recursive`) option.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/pictures/libby
$ ls -F
by_pool/  libby_arrowrock.jpg  libby.jpg  on_floor/
$ ls -lF *
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby.jpg

by_pool/:
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_by_pool_02.jpg
drwxr-xr-x 2 scott scott ... lieberman_pool

on_floor/:
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_floor_01.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_floor_02.jpg
$ chgrp -R family */*
$ ls -l *
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg

by_pool:
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_by_pool_02.jpg
drwxr-xr-x 2 scott family ... lieberman_pool

on_floor:
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_on_floor_01.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_on_floor_02.jpg
```

### Caution

If you used `chgrp -R family *`, you wouldn't change any of the dot files in the `/home/scott/pictures/libby` directory. However, `chgrp -R family .*` should not be used. It changes all the dot files in the current directory, but `.*` also matches `..`, so all the files in the parent directory are also changed, which is probably not what you want!

## Keep Track of Changes Made to a File's Group with `chgrp`

**`chgrp -v`**

**`chgrp -c`**

You've probably noticed that `chgrp`, like all well-behaved Linux applications, only gives you feedback if there's a problem. If a program works and does its job correctly, it doesn't bother you with "Hey! I did it, and it worked!" Instead, Linux command-line applications are only noisy when an issue needs to be resolved.

If you want to know what `chgrp` is doing while it's doing it, first try the `-v` (or `--verbose`) option. This tells you, every step of the way, just what tasks `chgrp` performs.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 4 scott scott ... by_pool/
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_couch.jpg
drwxr-xr-x 2 scott scott ... on_floor/
$ chgrp -v family *
changed group of 'by_pool' to family
changed group of 'libby_arrowrock.jpg' to family
group of 'libby.jpg' retained as family
changed group of 'libby_on_couch.jpg' to family
changed group of 'on_floor' to family
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 4 scott family ... by_pool/
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_on_couch.jpg
drwxr-xr-x 2 scott family ... on_floor/
```

Notice what happened in this example. The `libby.jpg` file was already a member of the `family` group, but `-v` went ahead and reported on it anyway, making sure that you knew that `libby.jpg`'s group was kept as `family`. If you're changing groups, you probably don't need to know about items that already belong to the new group. In cases like that, you want to use the `-c` (or `--changes`) option, which (unsurprisingly) only reports changes made.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 4 scott scott ... by_pool/
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_couch.jpg
drwxr-xr-x 2 scott scott ... on_floor/
$ chgrp -c family *
changed group of 'by_pool' to family
changed group of 'libby_arrowrock.jpg' to family
changed group of 'libby_on_couch.jpg' to family
changed group of 'on_floor' to family
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 4 scott family ... by_pool/
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby_on_couch.jpg
drwxr-xr-x 2 scott family ... on_floor/
```

This time, nothing was reported to you about `libby.jpg` because it was already in the `family` group. So if you want a full report, even for files that won't be changed, use `-v`; for a more concise listing, use `-c`.

## Change the Owner of Files and Directories

### **chown**

Changing a file's group is important, but it's far more likely that you'll change owners. To change groups, use `chgrp`; to change owners, use `chown`.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_couch.jpg
$ chown denise libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 denise family ... libby.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_couch.jpg
```

Some of the points previously made about `chgrp` in "[Change the Group Owning Files and Directories](#)" apply to `chown` as well. The `chgrp` command uses either a user's name or her numeric ID. The numeric ID for users can be seen by running `cat /etc/passwd`, which gives you something like this:

```
bind:x:110:118::/var/cache/bind:/bin/false
scott:x:1001:1001:Scott,,,:/home/scott:/bin/bash
ntop:x:120:120::/var/lib/ntop:/bin/false
```

The first number you see is the numeric ID for that user (the second number is the numeric ID for the main group associated with the user).

Also, you can only change the owner of a file if you are the current owner (or root, of course). That shouldn't surprise you, but it's good to remember nonetheless.

### Caution

If you use `chown -R scott *`, you do not change any of the dot files in the directory. However, `chown -R scott .*` should not be used. It changes all the dot files in the current directory, but `.*` also matches `..`, so all the files in the parent directory are also changed, which is probably not what you want.

## Change the Owner and Group of Files and Directories

### **chown owner:group**

You've seen that you can use `chgrp` to change groups and `chown` to change owners, but it's possible to use `chown` to kill two birds with one stone. After `chown`, specify the user and then the group, separated by a colon, and finally the file or directory (this is one reason why you should avoid using colons in user or group names).

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby.jpg
$ chown denise:family libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 denise family ... libby.jpg
```

You can even use `chown` to change only a group by leaving off the user in front of the colon.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby.jpg
$ chown :family libby.jpg
$ ls -l-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

### Tip

What if a user or group does have a colon in its name? Just type the backslash in front of that colon, which "escapes" the character and tells the system that it's just a colon, and not a separator between a user and group name:

```
$ chown denise:family\:parents libby.jpg
```

This works, but it's better to disallow colons in user and group names in the first place.

Because `chown` does everything `chgrp` does, there's very little reason to use `chgrp`, unless you feel like it.

### Note

When you separate the user and group, you can actually use either a `.` or `:` character. New recommendations are to stick with the `:`, however, because the `.` is deprecated.

Understand the Basics of Permissions

Before moving on to the `chmod` command, which allows you to change the permissions associated with a file or directory, let's review how Linux understands those permissions.

Note

Linux systems are beginning to use a more granular and powerful permission system known as Access Control Lists (ACLs). At this time, however, ACLs are still not widely used, so they're not covered here. For more info about ACLs, see "Access Control Lists" at Linux Magazine ([www.linux-mag.com/2004-11/guru\\_01.html](http://www.linux-mag.com/2004-11/guru_01.html)) and "An ACL GUI for Linux" at The Open Source Weblog (<http://opensource.weblogsinc.com/2005/12/06/an-acl-gui-for-linux/>).

Linux understands that three sets of users can work with a file or directory: the actual owner (also known as the file's user), a group, and everyone else on the system. Each of these sets is represented by a different letter, as shown in Table 7.1.

Table 7.1. Users and Their Abbreviations

User Group	Abbreviation
User (owner)	u
Group	g
Others	o

In the "List Permissions, Ownership, and More" section in Chapter 2, "The Basics," you learned about long permissions, which indicate what users can do with files and directories. In that section, you looked at three attributes: read, write, and execute, represented by `r`, `w`, and `x`, respectively. Additional possibilities are `suid`, `sgid`, and the sticky bit, represented by `s` (or `S` on some systems), `t` (or `T`), and `l`. Keep in mind, however, that all of these can have different meanings depending on whether the item with the attribute is a file or a directory. Table 7.2 summarizes each attribute, its abbreviation, and what it means.

Table 7.2. Permission Letters and Their Meanings

File Attribute

Abbreviation

Meaning for File

Meaning for Directory

Readable

r

Can view.

Can list with `ls`.

Writable

w

Can edit.

Can delete, rename, or add files.

Executable

x

Can run as program.

Can access to read files and subdirectories or to run files.

suid

s

Any user can execute the file with owner's permissions.

Not applicable.

sgid

s

Any user can execute the file with group's permissions.

All newly created files in a directory belong to the group owning the directory.

Sticky bit

t

Tells OS that the file will be frequently executed, so it's constantly kept in swap space for fast access (only for older Unix systems; Linux ignores.)

User cannot delete or rename files, unless he is the file's or containing directory' owner.

Note

The root user can always do anything to any file or directory, so the previous table doesn't apply to root.

Each of these file attributes is covered in more detail in the following sections. Now that you understand the basics, let's look at using the `chmod` command to change the permissions of files and directories.

## Change Permissions on Files and Directories Using Alphabetic Notation

**chmod [ugo] [+-=] [rwx]**

You can use two notations with `chmod`: alphabetic or numeric. Both have their advantages, but it's sometimes easier for users to learn the alphabetic system first. Basically, the alphabetic method uses a simple formula: the user group you want to affect (`u`, `g`, `o`); followed by a plus sign (+) to grant permission, a minus sign (-) to remove permission, or an equal sign (=) to set exact permission; followed by the letters (`r`, `w`, `x`, `s`, `t`) representing the permission you want to alter. For instance, let's say you want to allow members of the `family` group to be able to change a picture.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod g+w libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

Easy enough. But what if you had wanted to give both the `family` group and all other users write permission on the file?

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod go+w libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

Of course, because you're really giving all users the owner, the group, and the world read and write access, you could have just done it like this:

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod a=rw libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

You realize you made a mistake, and need to remove the capability of the `family` group and the world to alter that picture, and also ensure that the world can't even see the picture.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod go-w libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod o-r libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r----- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

Instead of the -, you could have used the =:

```
$ ls -l
```

```

-rw-rw-rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod g=r libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r--rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod o= libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r----- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg

```

Notice on the last `chmod` that `o` equaled nothing, effectively removing all permissions for all other users on the system. Now that's fast and efficient!

The advantage to the alphabetic system is that it's often fast, but you can also see its main disadvantage in the last example: If you want to make changes to two or more user groups and those changes are different for each user group, you end up running `chmod` at least two times. The next section shows how numeric permissions get around that problem.

## Change Permissions on Files and Directories Using Numeric Permissions

**`chmod [0-7] [0-7] [0-7]`**

Numeric permissions (also known as octal permissions) are built around the binary numeric system. We're going to skip the complicated reasons why the permissions have certain numbers and focus on the end meaning: read (`r`) has a value of 4, write (`w`) is 2, and execute (`x`) is 1. Remember that Linux permissions recognize three user groups: the owner, the group, and the world, and each user group can read, write, and execute. (See [Table 7.3](#).)

**Table 7.3. Permissions and Numeric Representations**

	Owner	Group	World
Permissions	<code>r; w; x</code>	<code>r; w; x</code>	<code>r; w; x</code>
Numeric representation	4; 2; 1	4; 2; 1	4; 2; 1

Permissions under this schema become a matter of simple addition. Here are a few examples:

- A user has read and write permissions for a file or directory. Read is 4, write is 2, and execute is 0 (because it's not granted).  $4 + 2 + 0 = 6$ .
- A user has read and execute permissions for a file. Read is 4, write is 0 (because that permission hasn't been granted), and execute is 1.  $4 + 0 + 1 = 5$ .
- A user has read, write, and execute permissions for a directory. Read is 4, write is 2, and execute is 1.  $4 + 2 + 1 = 7$ .

Under this method, the most a user group can have is 7 (read, write, and execute), and the least is 0 (cannot read, write, or execute). Because there are three user groups, you have three numbers, each between 0 and 7, and each representing what permissions that user group has associated with it. [Table 7.4](#) shows the possible numbers and what they mean.



**Table 7.4. Numeric Permissions Represented with `ls -l`**

Number	<code>ls -l</code> Representation
0	---
1	--x
2	-w-
3	-wx
4	r--
5	r-x
6	rw-
7	rwX

Although a wide variety of permissions can be set, a few tend to reappear constantly. [Table 7.5](#) shows the common permissions and what they mean.

**Table 7.5. Common Permissions Represented with `ls -l`**

Command	Representation
<code>chmod</code>	<code>ls -l</code>

### Meaning

```
chmod 400
```

```
-r-----
```

Owner can read; no one else can do anything.

```
chmod 644
```

```
-rw-r--r--
```

Everyone can read; only owner can edit.

```
chmod 660
```

```
-rw-rw----
```

Owner and group can read and edit; world can do nothing.

```
chmod 664
```

```
-rw-rw-r--
```

Everyone can read; owner and group can edit.

```
chmod 700
```

```
-rwx-----
```

Owner can read, write, and execute; no one else can do anything.

```
chmod 744
```

```
-rwxr--r--
```

Everyone can read; only owner can edit and execute.

```
chmod 755
```

```
-rwxr-xr-x
```

Everyone can read and execute; only owner can edit.

```
chmod 777
```

```
-rwxrwxrwx
```

Everyone can read, edit, and execute (not usually a good idea).

### Caution

Yes, you can set `chmod 000` on a file or directory, but now the only user who can do anything with it or use `chmod` to change permissions again is `root`.

Octal permissions should now make a bit of sense. They require a bit more cogitation to understand than alphabetic permissions, but they also allow you to set changes in one fell swoop. Let's revisit the examples from ["Change Permissions on Files and Directories Using Alphabetic Notation"](#) but with numbers instead.

Let's say you want to allow members of the `family` group to be able to change a picture.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod 664 libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

What if you had wanted to give both the `family` group and all other users write permission on the file?

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod 666 libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

You realize you made a mistake, and you need to remove the capability of the `family` group and the world to alter that picture and also ensure that the world can't even see the picture.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-rw-rw- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
$ chmod 640 libby.jpg
$ ls -l
-rw-r----- 1 scott family ... libby.jpg
```

This example shows the key advantage of this method. What took two steps with alphabetic notation—first `chmod go-w` and then `chmod o-r` (or `chmod g=r` and then `chmod o=`)—only takes a single command with numeric notation. For this reason, you often see advanced Linux gurus use octal notation because it's quicker and more seemingly precise.

## Change Permissions Recursively

**`chmod -R`**

You've probably noticed by now that many Linux commands allow you to apply them recursively to files and directories, and `chmod` is no different. With the `-R` (or `--recursive`) option, you can change the permissions of hundreds of file system objects in seconds—just be sure that's what you want to do.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/pictures/libby

$ ls -lF
drwxrw---- 2 scott scott ... by_pool/
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby.jpg
drwxrw---- 2 scott scott ... on_floor/
$ ls -l *
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_arrowrock.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby.jpg

by_pool:
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_by_pool_02.jpg
-rwxr-xr-x 2 scott scott ... lieberman_pool.jpg

on_floor:
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_floor_01.jpg
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott ... libby_on_floor_02.jpg
$ chgrp -R family *
$ chmod -R 660 *
chmod: 'by_pool' : Permission denied
chmod: 'on_floor' : Permission denied
```

"Permission denied?" What happened? Take a look at [Table 7.2](#). If a file is executable, it can be run as a program, but a directory must be executable to allow users access inside it to read its files and subdirectories. Running `chmod -R 660 *` removed the `x` permission from everything files and directories. When `chmod` went to report what it had done, it couldn't because it couldn't read inside those directories, since they were no longer executable.

So what should you do? There really isn't a simple answer. You could run `chmod` using a wildcard that only affects files of a certain type, like this:

```
$ chmod -R 660 *.jpg
```

That would only affect images and not directories, so you wouldn't have any issues. If you have files of more than one type, however, it can quickly grow tedious, as you'll have to run `chmod` once for every file type.

If you have many subdirectories within subdirectories, or too many file types to deal with, you can be really clever and use the `find` command to look for all files that are not directories and then change their permissions. You'll learn more about that in [Chapter 10](#), "The `find` Command."

The big takeaway here: When changing permissions recursively, be careful. You might not get what you expected and end up preventing access to files and subdirectories accidentally.

## Set and Then Clear `suid`

**`chmod u[+-]s`**

In the "Understand the Basics of Permissions" section, you looked at several possible permissions. You've focused on `r`, `w`, and `x` because those are the most common, but others can come in handy at times. Let's take

a look at `suid`, which only applies to executable files, never directories.

After `suid` is set, `suid` means that a user can execute a file with the owner's permissions, as though it was the owner of the program running it. You can see a common example of `suid` in action by looking at the permissions for the `passwd` command, which allows users to set and change their passwords.

```
$ ls -l /usr/bin/passwd
-rwsr-xr-x 1 root root ... /usr/bin/passwd
```

You can see that `passwd` is set as `suid` because it has an `s` where the user's `x` should be. The `root` user owns `passwd`, but it's necessary that ordinary users be allowed to run the command, or they wouldn't be able to change their passwords on their own. To make the `passwd` command executable for everyone, `x` is set for the user, the group, and all users on the system. That's not enough, however. The answer is to set `passwd` as `suid root`, so anyone can run it with `root`'s permissions for that command.

#### Note

You might see both an `s` and an `S` to indicate that `suid` is set. You see an `s` if the owner already had execute permissions (`x`) before you set `suid`, and an `S` if the owner didn't have execute set before `suid` was put in place. The end result is the same, but the capitalization tells you what was in place originally.

You can set and unset `suid` in two ways: using the alphabet or using numbers. The alphabet method would look like this:

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/bin
$ ls -l
-rwxr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
$ chmod u+s backup_data
$ ls -l
-rwsr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
```

Now anyone in the `admins` group can run the `backup_data` script as though they were the user `scott`. But note that anyone not in the `admins` group is shut out because it only has read permission for the program. If it was necessary for everyone on the system to be able to run `backup_data` as `scott`, the permissions would be `-rwsr-xr-x`.

Removing `suid` is a matter of using `u-` instead of `u+`.

```
$ ls -l
-rwsr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
$ chmod u-s backup_data
$ ls -l
-rwxr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
```

Setting `suid` via octal permissions is a bit more complicated, only because it introduces a new facet to the numeric permissions you've been using. You'll recall that numeric permissions use three digits, with the first representing what is allowed for the owner, the second for the group, and the third for all other users. It turns

out that there's actually a fourth digit that appears to the left of the owner's number. That digit is a 0 the vast majority of the time, however, so it's not necessary to display or use it. In other words, `chmod 644 libby.jpg` and `chmod 0644 libby.jpg` are exactly the same thing. You only need that fourth digit when you want to change `suid` (or `sgid` or the sticky bit, as you'll see in the following sections).

The number for setting `suid` is 4, so you'd change `backup_data` using numbers like this:

```
$ pwd
/home/scott/bin
$ ls -l
-rwxr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
$ chmod 4754 backup_data
$ ls -l
-rwsr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
```

Removing `suid` is a matter of purposely invoking the 0 because that sets things back to the default state, without `suid` in place.

```
$ ls -l
-rwsr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
$ chmod 0754 backup_data
$ ls -l
-rwxr-xr-- 1 scott admins ... backup_data
```

#### Note

As an ordinary user, it's not very likely that you'll need to change programs to `suid`. Most often it's associated with programs owned by `root`, but it's still good to know about it for that every-so-often case in which you need to use it.

## Set and Then Clear `sgid`

### `chmod g[+-]s`

Closely related to `suid` is `sgid`. `sgid` can apply to both files and directories. For files, `sgid` is just like `suid`, except that a user can now execute a file with the group's permissions instead of an owner's permissions. For example, on your system the `crontab` command is probably set as `sgid`, so that users can ask `cron` to run programs for them, but as the much more restricted `crontab` group rather than the all-powerful `root` user.

```
$ ls -l /usr/bin/crontab
-rwxr-sr-x 1 root crontab ... /usr/bin/crontab
```

When applied to directories, `sgid` does something interesting: Any subsequent files created in that directory belong to the group assigned to the directory. An example helps make this clearer.

Let's say you have three users Alice, Bob, and Carol who are all members of the `admins` group. Alice's username is `alice`, and her primary group is also `alice`, an extremely common occurrence on most Linux systems. Bob and Carol follow the same pattern, with their usernames and primary groups being, respectively, `bob` and `carol`. If Alice creates a file in a directory shared by the `admins` group, the owner and group for that file is `alice`, which means that the other members of the `admins` group are unable to write to that file. Sure, Alice could run `chgrp admins document` (or `chown :admins document`) after she creates a new file, but that quickly grows incredibly tedious.

If the shared directory is set to `sgid`, however, any new file created in that directory is still owned by the user who created the file, but it's also automatically assigned to the directory's group, in this case, `admins`. The result: Alice, Bob, and Carol can all read and edit any files created in that shared directory, with a minimum of tedium.

Unsurprisingly, you can set `sgid` with either letters or numbers. Using letters, `sgid` is just like `suid`, except that a `g` instead of a `u` is used. Let's look at `sgid` applied to a directory, but keep in mind that the same process is used on a file.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
$ chmod g+s bin
$ ls -lF
drwxr-Sr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
```

## Note

You might see both an `s` and an `S` to indicate that `sgid` is set. You see an `s` if the group already had execute permissions (`x`) before you set `sgid`, and an `S` if the group didn't have execute set before `sgid` was put in place. The end result is the same, but the capitalization tells you what was in place originally.

Removing `sgid` is pretty much the opposite of adding it.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-Sr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
$ chmod g-s bin
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
```

If you haven't already read the previous section, "Set and Then Clear `suid`," go back and do so, as it explains the otherwise mysterious fourth digit that appears just before the number representing the owner's permissions. In the case of `suid`, that number is 4; for `sgid`, it's 2.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
$ chmod 2755 bin
$ ls -lF
drwxr-Sr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
```

You remove `sgid` the same way you remove `suid`: with a 0 at the beginning, which takes `sgid` out of the picture.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-Sr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
$ chmod 0755 bin
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x 11 scott admins ... bin/
```

#### Note

You know what creating a new file in a `sgid` directory will do, but be aware that other file system processes can also be affected by `sgid`. If you copy a file with `cp` into the `sgid` directory, it acquires the group of that directory. If you move a file with `mv` into the `sgid` directory, however, it keeps its current group ownership and does not acquire that of the directory's group. Finally, if you create a new directory inside the `sgid` directory using `mkdir`, it not only inherits the group that owns the `sgid` directory, but also becomes `sgid` itself.

## Set and Then Clear the Sticky Bit

### `chmod [+–]t`

Besides being a fun phrase that rolls off the tongue, what's the sticky bit? In the old days of Unix, if the sticky bit was set for an executable file, the OS knew that the file was going to be run constantly, so it was kept in swap space so it could be quickly and efficiently accessed. Linux is a more modern system, so it ignores the sticky bit when it's set on files.

That means that the sticky bit is used on directories. After it is set on a folder, users cannot delete or rename files in that folder unless they are that file's owner or the owner of the directory that has the sticky bit set on it. If the sticky bit isn't set and the folder is writable for users, that also means that those users can delete and rename any files in that directory. The sticky bit prevents that from happening. The most common place you'll see it is in your `/tmp` directory, which is world-writable by design, but the individual files and folders within `/tmp` are protected from other users by the sticky bit.

```
$ ls -l /
drwxrwxrwt 12 root root ... tmp
[Results truncated for length]
```

#### Note

You may see both a `t` and a `T` to indicate that the sticky bit is set. You see a `t` if the world already had execute permissions (`x`) before you set the sticky bit, and a `T` if the world didn't have execute set before the sticky bit was put in place. The end result is the same, but the capitalization tells you what was in place originally.



Like so many other examples using `chmod` in this chapter, it's possible to set the sticky bit with either letters or numbers.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-x 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
$ chmod +t libby_pix
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-t 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
```

Two things might be a bit confusing here. First, although previous uses of the alphabetic method for setting permissions required you to specify who was affected by typing in a `u`, `g`, or `o`, for instance, that's not necessary with the sticky bit. A simple `+t` is all that is required.

Second, note that the `t` appears in the world's execute position, but even though the directory isn't world-writable, it still allows members of the `family` group to write to the directory, while preventing those members from deleting files unless they own them.

Removing the sticky bit is about as straightforward as you could hope.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-t 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
$ chmod -t libby_pix
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-x 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
```

Setting the sticky bit using octal permissions involves the fourth digit already covered in "[List All Available Printers](#)" and "[Set and Then Clear `sgid`](#)." Where `suid` uses 4 and `sgid` uses 2, the sticky bit uses 1 (see a pattern?).

```
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-x 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
$ chmod 1775 libby_pix
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-t 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
```

Once again, a 0 cancels out the sticky bit.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-t 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
$ chmod 0775 libby_pix
$ ls -lF
drwxrwxr-x 2 scott family ... libby_pix/
```

The sticky bit isn't something you'll be using on many directories on your workstation, but on a server it can be incredibly handy. Keep it in mind, and you'll find that it solves some otherwise thorny permission problems.

## Tip

In the interest of speeding up your time on the command line, it's possible to set combinations of `suid`, `sgid`, and the sticky bit at the same time. In the same way that you add 4 (read), 2 (write), and 1 (execute) together to get the numeric permissions for users, you can do the same for `suid`, `sgid`, and the sticky bit.

Number	Meaning
0	Removes sticky bit, <code>sgid</code> , and <code>suid</code>
1	Sets sticky bit
2	Sets <code>sgid</code>
3	Sets sticky bit and <code>sgid</code>
4	Sets <code>suid</code>
5	Sets sticky bit and <code>suid</code>
6	Sets <code>sgid</code> and <code>suid</code>
7	Sets sticky bit, <code>sgid</code> , and <code>suid</code>

Be sure to note that using a 0 removes `suid`, `sgid`, and the sticky bit all at the same time. If you use 0 to remove `suid` but you still want the sticky bit set, you need to go back and reset the sticky bit.

## Conclusion

Permissions are vitally important for the security and even sanity of a Linux system, and they can seem overwhelming at first. With a bit of thought and learning, however, it's possible to get a good handle on Linux permissions and use them to your advantage. The combination of `chgrp` to change group ownership, `chown` to change user ownership (and group ownership as well), and the powerful `chmod` gives a Linux user a wealth of tools at her disposal that enable her to set permissions in a powerful, effective way.

## Chapter 8. Archiving and Compression

Although the differences are sometimes made opaque in casual conversation, there is in fact a complete difference between archiving files and compressing them. Archiving means that you take 10 files and combine them into one file, with no difference in size. If you start with 10 100KB files and archive them, the resulting single file is 1000KB. On the other hand, if you compress those 10 files, you might find that the resulting files range from only a few kilobytes to close to the original size of 100KB, depending upon the original file type.

## Note

In fact, you might end up with a bigger file during compression! If the file is already compressed, compressing it again adds extra overhead, resulting in a slightly bigger file.

All of the archive and compression formats in this chapter—`zip`, `gzip`, `bzip2`, and `tar`—are popular, but `zip` is probably the world's most widely used format. That's because of its almost universal use on Windows, but `zip` and `unzip` are well supported among all major (and most minor) operating systems, so things compressed using `zip` also work on Linux and Mac OS. If you're sending archives out to users and you don't know which operating systems they're using, `zip` is a safe choice to make.

`gzip` was designed as an open-source replacement for an older Unix program, `compress`. It's found on virtually every Unix-based system in the world, including Linux and Mac OS X, but it is much less common on Windows. If you're sending files back and forth to users of Unix-based machines, `gzip` is a safe choice.

The `bzip2` command is the new kid on the block. Designed to supersede `gzip`, `bzip2` creates smaller files, but at the cost of speed. That said, computers are so fast nowadays that most users won't notice much of a difference between the times it takes `gzip` or `bzip2` to compress a group of files.

#### Note

Linux Magazine published a good article comparing several different compression formats, which you can find at <http://www.linux-mag.com/content/view/1678/43/>.

`zip`, `gzip`, and `bzip2` are focused on compression (although `zip` also archives). The `tar` command does one thing—archive—and it has been doing it for a long time. It's found almost solely on Unix-based machines. You'll definitely run into `tar` files (also called `tarballs`) if you download source code, but almost every Linux user can expect to encounter a `tarball` some time in his career.

## Archive and Compress Files Using `zip`

### `zip`

`zip` both archives and compresses files, thus making it great for sending multiple files as email attachments, backing up items, or for saving disk space. Using it is simple. Let's say you want to send a TIFF to someone via email. A TIFF image is uncompressed, so it tends to be pretty large. Zipping it up should help make the email attachment a bit smaller.

#### Note

When using `ls -l`, I'm only showing the information needed for each example.

```
$ ls -lh
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1006K young_edgar_scott.tif
$ zip grandpa.zip young_edgar_scott.tif
  adding: young_edgar_scott.tif (deflated 19%)
$ ls -lh
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1006K young_edgar_scott.tif
-rw-r--r-- scott scott  819K grandpa.zip grandpa.zip
```

In this case, you shaved off about 200KB on the resulting zip file, or 19%, as `zip` helpfully informs you. Not bad. You can do the same thing for several images.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 251980 edgar_intl_shoe.tif
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1130922 edgar_baby.tif
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1029224 young_edgar_scott.tif
$ zip grandpa.zip edgar_intl_shoe.tif edgar_baby.tif young_edgar_scott.tif
  adding: edgar_intl_shoe.tif (deflated 4%)
  adding: edgar_baby.tif (deflated 12%)
  adding: young_edgar_scott.tif (deflated 19%)
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 251980 edgar_intl_shoe.tif
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1130922 edgar_baby.tif
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 2074296 grandpa.zip
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1029224 young_edgar_scott.tif
```

It's not too polite, however, to zip up individual files this way. For three files, it's not so bad. The recipient will unzip `grandpa.zip` and end up with three individual files. If the payload was 50 files, however, the user would end up with files strewn everywhere. Better to zip up a directory containing those 50 files so when the user unzips it, he's left with a tidy directory instead.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x scott scott edgar_scott/
$ zip grandpa.zip edgar_scott
  adding: edgar_scott/ (stored 0%)
  adding: edgar_scott/edgar_baby.tif (deflated 12%)
  adding: edgar_scott/young_edgar_scott.tif (deflated 19%)
  adding: edgar_scott/edgar_intl_shoe.tif (deflated 4%)
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x scott scott 160 edgar_scott/
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 2074502 grandpa.zip
```

Whether you're zipping up a file, several files, or a directory, the pattern is the same: the `zip` command, followed by the name of the Zip file you're creating, and finished with the item(s) you're adding to the Zip file.

## Get the Best Compression Possible with `zip`

### – [0–9]

It's possible to adjust the level of compression that `zip` uses when it does its job. The `zip` command uses a scale from 0 to 9, in which 0 means "no compression at all" (which is like `tar`, as you'll see later), 1 means "do the job quickly, but don't bother compressing very much," and 9 means "compress the heck out of the files, and I don't mind waiting a bit longer to get the job done." The default is 6, but modern computers are fast enough that it's probably just fine to use 9 all the time.

Say you're interested in researching Herman Melville's *Moby-Dick*, so you want to collect key texts to help

you understand the book: Moby-Dick itself, Milton's Paradise Lost, and the Bible's book of Job. Let's compare the results of different compression rates.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
$ zip -0 moby.zip *.txt
adding: job.txt (stored 0%)
adding: moby-dick.txt (stored 0%)
adding: paradise_lost.txt (stored 0%)
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1848444 moby.zip
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
$ zip -1 moby.zip *.txt
updating: job.txt (deflated 58%)
updating: moby-dick.txt (deflated 54%)
updating: paradise_lost.txt (deflated 50%)
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 869946 moby.zip
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
$ zip -9 moby.zip *.txt
updating: job.txt (deflated 65%)
updating: moby-dick.txt (deflated 61%)
updating: paradise_lost.txt (deflated 56%)
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 747730 moby.zip
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
```

In tabular format, the results look like this:

Book	zip -0	zip -1	zip -9
Moby-Dick	0%	54%	61%
Paradise Lost	0%	50%	56%
Job	0%	58%	65%
Total (in bytes)	1848444	869946	747730

The results you see here would vary depending on the file types (text files typically compress well) and the sizes of the original files, but this gives you a good idea of what you can expect. Unless you have a really slow machine or you're just naturally impatient, you should just use `-9` all the time to get the maximum compression.

#### Note

If you want to be clever, define an alias in your `.bashrc` file that looks like this:

```
alias zip='zip -9'
```

That way you'll always use `-9` and won't have to think about it.

## Password-Protect Compressed Zip Archives

### `-P -e`

The Zip program allows you to password-protect your Zip archives using the `-P` option. You shouldn't use this option. It's completely insecure, as you can see in the following example (the actual password is 12345678):

```
$ zip -P 12345678 moby.zip *.txt
```

Because you had to specify the password on the command line, anyone viewing your shell's history (and you might be surprised how easy it is for other users to do so) can see your password in all its glory. Don't use the `-P` option!

Instead, just use the `-e` option, which encrypts the contents of your Zip file and also uses a password. The difference, however, is that you're prompted to type the password in, so it won't be saved in the history of your shell events.

```
$ zip -e moby.zip *.txt
Enter password:
Verify password:
adding: job.txt (deflated 65%)
adding: moby-dick.txt (deflated 61%)
adding: paradise_lost.txt (deflated 56%)
```

The only part of this that's saved in the shell is `zip -e moby.zip *.txt`. The actual password you type disappears into the ether, unavailable to anyone viewing your shell history.

### Caution

The security offered by the Zip program's password protection isn't that great. In fact, it's pretty easy to find a multitude of tools floating around the Internet that can quickly crack a password-protected Zip archive. Think of password-protecting a Zip file as the difference between writing a message on a postcard and sealing it in an envelope: It's good enough for ordinary folks, but it won't stop a determined attacker.

Also, the version of zip included with some Linux distros may not support encryption, in which case you'll see a zip error: "encryption not supported." The only solution: recompile zip from source. Ugh.

## Unzip Files

### unzip

Expanding a Zip archive isn't hard at all. To create a zipped archive, use the `zip` command; to expand that archive, use the `unzip` command.

```
$ unzip moby.zip
Archive:  moby.zip
inflating: job.txt
inflating: moby-dick.txt
inflating: paradise_lost.txt
```

The `unzip` command helpfully tells you what it's doing as it works. To get even more information, add the `-v` option (which stands, of course, for verbose).

```
unzip -v moby.zip
Archive:  moby.zip
Length  Method  Size  Ratio CRC-32  Name
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  ----
 102519 Defl:X   35747   65% fabf86c9 job.txt
1236574 Defl:X  487553   61% 34a8cc3a moby-dick.txt
 508925 Defl:X  224004   56% 6abeld0f paradise_lost.t
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  ----
1848018          747304   60%              3 files
```

There's quite a bit of useful data here, including the method used to compress the files, the ratio of original to compressed file size, and the cyclic redundancy check (CRC) used for error correction.

## List Files That Will Be Unzipped

### -l

Sometimes you might find yourself looking at a Zip file and not remembering what's in that file. Or perhaps you want to make sure that a file you need is contained within that Zip file. To list the contents of a zip file without unzipping it, use the `-l` option (which stands for "list").

```
$ unzip -l moby.zip
Archive:  moby.zip
Length  Date    Time    Name
-----  ----    ----    ----
      0  01-26-06 18:40  bible/
 207254  01-26-06 18:40  bible/genesis.txt
 102519  01-26-06 18:19  bible/job.txt
1236574  01-26-06 18:19  moby-dick.txt
 508925  01-26-06 18:19  paradise_lost.txt
-----  ----    ----    ----
 2055272              5 files
```

From these results, you can see that `moby.zip` contains two files `moby-dick.txt` and `paradise_lost.txt` and a directory (`bible`), which itself contains two files, `genesis.txt` and `job.txt`. Now you know exactly what will happen when you expand `moby.zip`. Using the `-l` command helps prevent inadvertently unzipping a file that spews out 100 files instead of unzipping a directory that contains 100 files. The first leaves you with files strewn pell-mell, while the second is far easier to handle.

## Test Files That Will Be Unzipped

**-t**

Sometimes zipped archives become corrupted. The worst time to discover this is after you've unzipped the archive and deleted it, only to discover that some or even all of the unzipped contents are damaged and won't open. Better to test the archive first before you actually unzip it by using the `-t` (for test) option.

```
$ unzip -t moby.zip
Archive:  moby.zip
  testing: bible/                OK
  testing: bible/genesis.txt    OK
  testing: bible/job.txt        OK
  testing: moby-dick.txt        OK
  testing: paradise_lost.txt    OK
No errors detected in compressed data of moby.zip.
```

You really should use `-t` every time you work with a zipped file. It's the smart thing to do, and although it might take some extra time, it's worth it in the end.

## Archive and Compress Files Using `gzip`

**gzip**

Using `gzip` is a bit easier than `zip` in some ways. With `zip`, you need to specify the name of the newly created Zip file or `zip` won't work; with `gzip`, though, you can just type the command and the name of the file you want to compress.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
$ gzip paradise_lost.txt
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 224425 paradise_lost.txt.gz
```

You should be aware of a very big difference between `zip` and `gzip`: When you `zip` a file, `zip` leaves the original behind so you have both the original and the newly zipped file, but when you `gzip` a file, you're left with only the new `gzipped` file. The original is gone.



If you want `gzip` to leave behind the original file, you need to use the `-c` (or `--stdout` or `--to-stdout`) option, which outputs the results of `gzip` to the shell, but you need to redirect that output to another file. If you use `-c` and forget to redirect your output, you get nonsense like this:

```
$ gzip -c paradise_lost.txt
w`
I
l, (3  i`+MS3t1*f%eY [q
D}d]C%g      R@,r e trB3+3/ | *0DQs
BAqn, Y8*#" ] RU
*bU\G't (-xYz3-o' ~cnS K
c
```

Not good. Instead, output to a file.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
$ gzip -c paradise_lost.txt > paradise_lost.txt.gz
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott 497K paradise_lost.txt
-rw-r--r-- 1 scott scott 220K paradise_lost.txt.gz
```

Much better! Now you have both your original file and the zipped version.

### Tip

If you accidentally use the `-c` option without specifying an output file, just start pressing `Ctrl+C` several times until `gzip` stops.

## Archive and Compress Files Recursively Using `gzip`

### `-r`

If you want to use `gzip` on several files in a directory, just use a wildcard. You might not end up zipping everything you think you will, however, as this example shows.

```
$ ls -F
bible/  moby-dick.txt  paradise_lost.txt
$ ls -l *
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt

bible:
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 207254 genesis.txt
```

```
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
$ gzip *
gzip: bible is a directory -- ignored
$ ls -l *
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 489609 moby-dick.txt.gz
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 224425 paradise_lost.txt.gz

bible:
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 207254 genesis.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
```

Notice that the wildcard didn't do anything for the files inside the `bible` directory because `gzip` by default doesn't walk down into subdirectories. To get that behavior, you need to use the `-r` (or `--recursive`) option along with your wildcard.

```
$ ls -F
bible/  moby-dick.txt  paradise_lost.txt
$ ls -l *
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt

bible:
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 207254 genesis.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 102519 job.txt
$ gzip -r *
$ ls -l *
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 489609 moby-dick.txt.gz
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 224425 paradise_lost.txt.gz

bible:
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 62114 genesis.txt.gz
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 35984 job.txt.gz
```

This time, every file—even those in subdirectories—was gzipped. However, note that each file is individually gzipped. The `gzip` command cannot combine all the files into one big file, like you can with the `zip` command. To do that, you need to incorporate `tar`, as you'll see in "Archive and Compress Files with `tar` and `gzip`."

## Get the Best Compression Possible with `gzip`

### —[0–9]

Just as with `zip`, it's possible to adjust the level of compression that `gzip` uses when it does its job. The `gzip` command uses a scale from 0 to 9, in which 0 means "no compression at all" (which is like `tar`, as you'll see later), 1 means "do the job quickly, but don't bother compressing very much," and 9 means "compress the heck out of the files, and I don't mind waiting a bit longer to get the job done." The default is 6, but modern computers are fast enough that it's probably just fine to use 9 all the time.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
$ gzip -c -l moby-dick.txt > moby-dick.txt.gz
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
```

```
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 571005 moby-dick.txt.gz
$ gzip -c -9 moby-dick.txt > moby-dick.txt.gz
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 487585 moby-dick.txt.gz
```

Remember to use the `-c` option and pipe the output into the actual `.gz` file due to the way `gzip` works, as discussed in "[Archive and Compress Files Using gzip](#)."

#### Note

If you want to be clever, define an alias in your `.bashrc` file that looks like this:

```
alias gzip= ' gzip -9 '
```

That way, you'll always use `-9` and won't have to think about it.

## Uncompress Files Compressed with gzip

### gunzip

Getting files out of a gzipped archive is easy with the `gunzip` command.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 224425 paradise_lost.txt.gz
$ gunzip paradise_lost.txt.gz
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
```

In the same way that `gzip` removes the original file, leaving you solely with the gzipped result, `gunzip` removes the `.gz` file, leaving you with the final gunzipped result. If you want to ensure that you have both, you need to use the `-c` option (or `--stdout` or `--to-stdout`) and pipe the results to the file you want to create.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 224425 paradise_lost.txt.gz
$ gunzip -c paradise_lost.txt.gz > paradise_lost.txt
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 224425 paradise_lost.txt.gz
```

It's probably a good idea to use `-c`, especially if you plan to keep behind the `.gz` file or pass it along to someone else. Sure, you could use `gzip` and create your own archive, but why go to the extra work?

#### Note

If you don't like the `gunzip` command, you can also use `gzip -d` (or `--decompress` or `--uncompress`).

## Test Files That Will Be Unzipped with `gunzip`

### `-t`

Before gunzipping a file (or files) with `gunzip`, you might want to verify that they're going to `gunzip` correctly without any file corruption. To do this, use the `-t` (or `--test`) option.

```
$ gzip -t paradise_lost.txt.gz
$
```

That's right: If nothing is wrong with the archive, `gzip` reports nothing back to you. If there's a problem, you'll know, but if there's not a problem, `gzip` is silent. That can be a bit disconcerting, but that's how Unix-based systems work. They're generally only noisy if there's an issue you should know about, not if everything is working as it should.

## Archive and Compress Files Using `bzip2`

### `bzip2`

Working with `bzip2` is pretty easy if you're comfortable with `gzip`, as the creators of `bzip2` deliberately made the options and behavior of the new command as similar to its progenitor as possible.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
$ bzip2 moby-dick.txt
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 367248 moby-dick.txt.bz2
```

Just like `gzip`, `bzip2` leaves you with just the `.bz2` file. The original `moby-dick.txt` is gone. To keep the original file, use the `-c` (or `--stdout`) option and pipe the output to a filename that ends with `.bz2`.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
```

```
$ bzip2 -c moby-dick.txt > moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 367248 moby-dick.txt.bz2
```

If you look back at "[Archive and Compress Files Using gzip](#)," you'll see that `gzip` and `bzip2` are incredibly similar, which is by design.

## Get the Best Compression Possible with `bzip2`

### —[0–9]

Just as with `zip` and `gzip`, it's possible to adjust the level of compression that `bzip2` uses when it does its job. The `bzip2` command uses a scale from 0 to 9, in which 0 means "no compression at all" (which is like `tar`, as you'll see later), 1 means "do the job quickly, but don't bother compressing very much," and 9 means "compress the heck out of the files, and I don't mind waiting a bit longer to get the job done." The default is 6, but modern computers are fast enough that it's probably just fine to use 9 all the time.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
$ bzip2 -c -1 moby-dick.txt > moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 424084 moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ bzip2 -c -9 moby-dick.txt > moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 367248 moby-dick.txt.bz2
```

From 424KB with 1 to 367KB with 9 that's quite a difference! Also notice the difference in ultimate file size between `gzip` and `bzip2`. At -9, `gzip` compressed `moby-dick.txt` down to 488KB, while `bzip2` mashed it even further to 367KB. The `bzip2` command is noticeably slower than the `gzip` command, but on a fast machine that means that `bzip2` takes two or three seconds longer than `gzip`, which frankly isn't much to worry about.

### Note

If you want to be clever, define an alias in your `.bashrc` file that looks like this:

```
alias bzip2='bzip2 -9'
```

That way, you'll always use -9 and won't have to think about it.

## Uncompress Files Compressed with `bzip2`

### `bunzip2`

In the same way that `bzip2` was purposely designed to emulate `gzip` as closely as possible, the way `bunzip2` works is very close to that of `gunzip`.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 367248 moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ bunzip2 moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
```

You'll notice that `bunzip2` is similar to `gunzip` in another way: Both commands remove the original compressed file, leaving you with the final uncompressed result. If you want to ensure that you have both the compressed and uncompressed files, you need to use the `-c` option (or `--stdout` or `--to-stdout`) and pipe the results to the file you want to create.

```
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 367248 moby-dick.txt.bz2
$ bunzip2 -c moby-dick.txt.bz2 > moby-dick.txt
$ ls -l
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
-rw-r--r-- scott scott 367248 moby-dick.txt.bz2
```

It's a good thing when commands copy each other's options and behavior, as it makes them easier to learn. In this, the creators of `bzip2` and `bunzip2` showed remarkable foresight.

### Note

If you're not feeling favorable toward `bunzip2`, you can also use `bzip2 -d` (or `--decompress` or `--uncompress`).

## Test Files That Will Be Unzipped with `bunzip`

### `-t`

Before bunzipping a file (or files) with `bunzip`, you might want to verify that they're going to `bunzip` correctly without any file corruption. To do this, use the `-t` (or `--test`) option.

```
$ bunzip2 -t paradise_lost.txt.gz
$
```

Just as with `gunzip`, if there's nothing wrong with the archive, `bunzip2` doesn't report anything back to you. If there's a problem, you'll know, but if there's not a problem, `bunzip2` is silent.

## Archive Files with `tar`

### `-cf`

Remember, `tar` doesn't compress; it merely archives (the resulting archives are known as tarballs, by the way). Instead, `tar` uses other programs, such as `gzip` or `bzip2`, to compress the archives that `tar` creates. Even if you're not going to compress the tarball, you still create it the same way with the same basic options: `-c` (or `--create`), which tells `tar` that you're making a tarball, and `-f` (or `--file`), which is the specified filename for the tarball.

```
$ ls -l
scott scott 102519 job.txt
scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
$ tar -cf moby.tar *.txt
$ ls -l
scott scott 102519 job.txt
scott scott 1236574 moby-dick.txt
scott scott 1853440 moby.tar
scott scott 508925 paradise_lost.txt
```

Pay attention to two things here. First, add up the file sizes of `job.txt`, `moby-dick.txt`, and `paradise_lost.txt`, and you get 1848018 bytes. Compare that to the size of `moby.tar`, and you see that the tarball is only 5422 bytes bigger. Remember that `tar` is an archive tool, not a compression tool, so the result is at least the same size as the individual files put together, plus a little bit for overhead to keep track of what's in the tarball. Second, notice that `tar`, unlike `gzip` and `bzip2`, leaves the original files behind. This isn't a surprise, considering the `tar` command's background as a backup tool.

What's really cool about `tar` is that it's designed to compress entire directory structures, so you can archive a large number of files and subdirectories in one fell swoop.

```
$ ls -lF
drwxr-xr-x scott scott 168 moby-dick/
$ ls -l moby-dick/*
scott scott 102519 moby-dick/job.txt
scott scott 1236574 moby-dick/moby-dick.txt
scott scott 508925 moby-dick/paradise_lost.txt

moby-dick/bible:
scott scott 207254 genesis.txt
scott scott 102519 job.txt
$ tar -cf moby.tar moby-dick/
$ ls -lF
scott scott 168 moby-dick/
scott scott 2170880 moby.tar
```

The `tar` command has been around forever, and it's obvious why: It's so darn useful! But it gets even more useful when you start factoring in compression tools, as you'll see in the next section.

## Archive and Compress Files with `tar` and `gzip`

### `-zcvf`

If you look back at "[Archive and Compress Files Using `gzip`](#)" and "[Archive and Compress Files Using `bzip2`](#)" and think about what was discussed there, you'll probably start to figure out a problem. What if you want to compress a directory that contains 100 files, contained in various subdirectories? If you use `gzip` or `bzip2` with the `-r` (for recursive) option, you'll end up with 100 individually compressed files, each stored neatly in its original subdirectory. This is undoubtedly not what you want. How would you like to attach 100 `.gz` or `.bz2` files to an email? Yikes!

That's where `tar` comes in. First you'd use `tar` to archive the directory and its contents (those 100 files inside various subdirectories) and then you'd use `gzip` or `bzip2` to compress the resulting tarball. Because `gzip` is the most common compression program used in concert with `tar`, we'll focus on that.

You could do it this way:

```
$ ls -l moby-dick/*
scott scott 102519 moby-dick/job.txt
scott scott 1236574 moby-dick/moby-dick.txt
scott scott 508925 moby-dick/paradise_lost.txt

moby-dick/bible:
scott scott 207254 genesis.txt
scott scott 102519 job.txt
$ tar -cf moby.tar moby-dick/ | gzip -c >
moby.tar.gz
$ ls -l
scott scott 168 moby-dick/
scott scott 20 moby.tar.gz
```

That method works, but it's just too much typing! There's a much easier way that should be your default. It involves two new options for `tar`: `-z` (or `--gzip`), which invokes `gzip` from within `tar` so you don't have to do so manually, and `-v` (or `--verbose`), which isn't required here but is always useful, as it keeps you notified as to what `tar` is doing as it runs.

```
$ ls -l moby-dick/*
scott scott 102519 moby-dick/job.txt
scott scott 1236574 moby-dick/moby-dick.txt
scott scott 508925 moby-dick/paradise_lost.txt

moby-dick/bible:
scott scott 207254 genesis.txt
scott scott 102519 job.txt
$ tar -zcvf moby.tar.gz moby-dick/
moby-dick/
moby-dick/job.txt
moby-dick/bible/
moby-dick/bible/genesis.txt
moby-dick/bible/job.txt
moby-dick/moby-dick.txt
moby-dick/paradise_lost.txt
$ ls -l
scott scott 168 moby-dick
```



```
scott scott 846049 moby.tar.gz
```

The usual extension for a file that has had the `tar` and then the `gzip` commands used on it is `.tar.gz`; however, you could use `.tgz` and `.tar.gzip` if you like.

#### Note

It's entirely possible to use `bzip2` with `tar` instead of `gzip`. Your command would look like this (note the `-j` option, which is where `bzip2` comes in):

```
$ tar -jcvf moby.tar.bz2 moby-dick/
```

In that case, the extension should be `.tar.bz2`, although you may also use `.tar.bzip2`, `.tbz2`, or `.tbz`. Yes, it's very confusing that using `gzip` or `bzip2` might both result in a file ending with `.tbz`. This is a strong argument for using anything but that particular extension to keep confusion to a minimum.

## Test Files That Will Be Untarred and Uncompressed

### **-zvtf**

Before you take apart a tarball (whether or not it was also compressed using `gzip`), it's a really good idea to test it. First, you'll know if the tarball is corrupted, saving yourself hair pulling when files don't seem to work. Second, you'll know if the person who created the tarball thoughtfully tarred up a directory containing 100 files, or instead thoughtlessly tarred up 100 individual files, which you're just about to spew all over your desktop.

To test your tarball (once again assuming it was also zipped using `gzip`), use the `-t` (or `--list`) option.

```
$ tar -zvtf moby.tar.gz
scott/scott 0 moby-dick/
scott/scott 102519 moby-dick/job.txt
scott/scott 0 moby-dick/bible/
scott/scott 207254 moby-dick/bible/genesis.txt
scott/scott 102519 moby-dick/bible/job.txt
scott/scott 1236574 moby-dick/moby-dick.txt
scott/scott 508925 moby-dick/paradise_lost.txt
```

This tells you the permissions, ownership, file size, and time for each file. In addition, because every line begins with `moby-dick/`, you can see that you're going to end up with a directory that contains within it all the files and subdirectories that accompany the tarball, which is a relief.

Be sure that the `-f` is the last option because after that you're going to specify the name of the `.tar.gz` file. If you don't, `tar` complains:

```
$ tar -zvft moby.tar.gz
tar: You must specify one of the '-Acdrux' options
Try 'tar --help' or 'tar --usage' for more
information.
```

Now that you've ensured that your `.tar.gz` file isn't corrupted, it's time to actually open it up, as you'll see in the following section.

### Note

If you're testing a tarball that was compressed using `bzip2`, just use this command instead:

```
$ tar -jvtf moby.tar.bz2
```

## Untar and Uncompress Files

### **-zxvf**

To create a `.tar.gz` file, you used a set of options: `-zcvf`. To untar and uncompress the resulting file, you only make one substitution: `-x` (or `--extract`) for `-c` (or `--create`).

```
$ ls -l
-rsgranne rsgranne 846049 moby.tar.gz
$ tar -zxvf moby.tar.gz
moby-dick/
moby-dick/job.txt
moby-dick/bible/
moby-dick/bible/genesis.txt
moby-dick/bible/job.txt
moby-dick/moby-dick.txt
moby-dick/paradise_lost.txt
$ ls -l
-rsgranne rsgranne      168 moby-dick
-rsgranne rsgranne 846049 moby.tar.gz
```

Make sure you always test the file before you open it, as covered in the previous section, "[Test Files That Will Be Untarred and Uncompressed](#)." That means the order of commands you should run will look like this:

```
$ tar -zvtf moby.tar.gz
$ tar -zxvf moby.tar.gz
```

### Note

If you're opening a tarball that was compressed using `bzip2`, just use this command instead:

```
$ tar -jxvf moby.tar.bz2
```

## Conclusion

Back in the days of slow modems and tiny hard drives, archiving and compression was a necessity. These days, it's more of a convenience, but it's still something you'll find yourself using all the time. For instance, if you ever download source code to compile it, more than likely you'll find yourself face-to-face with a file such as `sourcecode.tar.gz`. In the future, you'll probably see more and more of those files ending with `.tar.bz2`. And if you exchange files with Windows users, you're going to run into files that end with `.zip`. Learn how to use your archival and compression tools because you're going to be using them far more than you think.



# Part III: Finding Stuff

[Chapter 9. Finding Stuff: Easy](#)

[Chapter 10. The find Command](#)

## Chapter 9. Finding Stuff: Easy

Every year, hard drives get bigger and cheaper, a nice combination. With all the technical toys we have in our lives nowdigital cameras, video cameras, MP3 players, as well as movies and music we find on the Netwe certainly have plenty of stuff to fill those hard drives. Every digital pack rat has to pay the price, however, and that too often tends to be an inability to find the stuff you want. It can be hard to find that one photo of your brother in the midst of 10,000 other pictures, or that paper you wrote when you have to dig through 600 other documents. Fortunately, Linux has powerful tools at your disposal that can help make retrieving a necessary file a quick and efficient activity.

### Search a Database of Filenames

#### **locate**

Know the name of a file, or even part of the name, but don't know where it resides on your system? That's what `locate` is for. The `locate` command looks for files, programs, and directories matching your search term. Any matching results are printed to your terminal, one after the other.

#### Note

In order to save space, I've replaced the first part of the path - `/home/scott` - with an ellipses.

```
$ locate haggard
.../txt/rider_haggard
.../txt/rider_haggard/Queen_of_the_Dawn.txt
.../txt/rider_haggard/Allan_and_the_Ice-Gods.txt
.../txt/rider_haggard/Heu-Heu_or_The_Monster.txt
```

Your search results show up quickly because `locate` isn't searching your system in real time. Instead, `locate` searches a database of filenames that is automatically updated daily (more about that in "[Update the Database Used by locate](#)" later in this chapter). Because `locate` searches a precreated database, its results appear almost instantaneously.

On your computer, though, you're probably using `slocate` instead of `locate`you're just not aware of it. The `slocate` command (which stands for secure locate) is a more recent version that won't search directories that the user running `slocate` doesn't have permission to view (for instance, if you're not root,

results from `/root` shouldn't show up when you search with `locate`). Before `slocate`, `locate` would spit back many errors complaining about permission problems; with `slocate`, those errors are a thing of the past.

To verify how `slocate` works, try the following. Note that the first search, done when you're a normal user and not root, fails. Use `su` to become root, run `locate` again, and bingo! Search results appear (`slocate.db` is the database file used by `slocate`, by the way).

```
$ locate slocate.db
$ su -
# locate slocate.db
/var/lib/slocate/slocate.db.tmp
/var/lib/slocate/slocate.db
```

To make things easy on users, however, most systems create a soft link for `/usr/bin/locate` that points to `/usr/bin/slocate`. To verify that your Linux distribution does this, try the following (these particular results are from a box running K/Ubuntu 5.10, a Debian-based distribution, and I've removed some data so I can focus on the important information):

```
$ ls -l /usr/bin/locate
root root /usr/bin/locate -> slocate
```

Because it's transparent to the user that she's running `slocate`, and because `locate` uses fewer letters and is therefore quicker to type, we're going to refer to `locate` in this book, even though `slocate` is the actual command that's being run.

## Search a Database of Filenames Without Worrying About Case

### `locate -i`

In the previous section, you tested `locate` by searching for any files or directories with the word `haggard` in the name, so you could find your collection of public domain H. Rider Haggard novels. The results looked like this:

```
$ locate haggard
.../txt/rider_haggard
.../txt/rider_haggard/Queen_of_the_Dawn.txt
.../txt/rider_haggard/Allan_and_the_Ice-Gods.txt
.../txt/rider_haggard/Heu-Heu_or_The_Monster.txt
```

This worked because the directory containing the novels had the word `haggard` in it. But if that directory had instead been named `H_Rider_Haggard`, the search would have failed due to Linux's case sensitivity (discussed in [Chapter 1](#), "Things to Know About Your Command Line"). Sure enough, when you use the `-i` option, a case-insensitive search is performed, finding files with both `haggard` and `Haggard` (and, in fact, `HAGGARD`, `HaGgArD`, and so on) in the path.

```
$ locate -i haggard
/txt/rider_haggard
```

```
/txt/rider_haggard/Queen_of_the_Dawn.txt
/txt/rider_haggard/Allan_and_the_Ice-Gods.txt
/txt/rider_haggard/Heu-Heu_or_The_Monster.txt
/txt/Rider_Haggard
/txt/Rider_Haggard/King_Solomons_Mines.txt
/txt/Rider_Haggard/Allan_Quatermain.txt
```

It turns out that there were more Haggard novels available than it first seemed. Remember to use `-i` when you want to maximize your `locate` results, as you can otherwise miss important files and folders that you wanted to find.

#### Note

For more on H. Rider Haggard, see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rider\\_Haggard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rider_Haggard). He's a fun, if dated, read.

## Manage Results Received When Searching a Database of Filenames

### `-n`

If you use `locate` very much, eventually you're going to run into something like this:

```
$ locate pdf
/etc/cups/pdftops.conf
/etc/xpdf
/etc/xpdf/xpdfrc-latin2
```

On this computer, we get 2,373 results. Far too many! Better to use this construction instead:

```
$ locate pdf | less
```

Pipe the output of your `locate` search to the pager `less` (which was covered in "[View Text Files a Screen at a Time](#)," in [Chapter 5](#), "[Viewing Files](#)"), and you get your 2,373 results one manageable screen at a time.

If you just want to see the first `x` results, where `x` is an integer of your choice, use the `-n` option, followed by the number of results you want to see.

```
$ locate -n 3 pdf
/etc/cups/pdftops.conf
/etc/xpdf
/etc/xpdf/xpdfrc-latin2
```

This is far more manageable, and might be all you need. Don't let `locate` just spew a flood of results at you; instead, take control of the `locate` command's output and use it to your favor.

## Update the Database Used by `locate`

### `updatedb`

The first section of this chapter that introduced `locate`, "[Search a Database of Filenames](#)," mentioned that the reason the command is so fast is because it is actually searching a database containing your machine's file and directory names. When `locate` is installed, it automatically sets itself up to scan your hard drive and update that database, usually in the middle of the night. That's great for convenience, but not so great if you need to find a file you just placed on your computer.

For instance, what if you install Rootkit Hunter, a program that looks for rootkits (used by bad guys to take control of your Linux box), and then you want to look at the files the program has installed? The `locate` command won't be able to help you because it doesn't know about those files and won't know about them until its database is updated at a later time. You can, however, manually update the database used by `locate` at any time by running `updatedb`. Because that command indexes virtually every file and folder on your computer, you need to be root to run it (or use `sudo` on distributions like K/Ubuntu that discourage root use).

```
# apt-get install rkhunter
# exit
$ locate rkhunter
$ su -
# updatedb
# exit
$ locate rkhunter
/usr/local/rkhunter
/usr/local/rkhunter/bin
/usr/local/rkhunter/etc
```

In the preceding commands, you first install `rkhunter`, the package name for Rootkit Hunter, and then exit root. You search for `rkhunter`, but it's nowhere to be seen. You become root again, run `updatedb` to scan your hard drive and let the `locate` database know about any changes, and then exit root. Finally, you search for `rkhunter` with `locate` again, and this time you're successful.

One thing you should be aware of, however: The speed with which `updatedb` works is directly proportional to the amount of stuff on your hard drive and the speed of your computer. Got a fast processor, a fast hard drive, and few files? Then `updatedb` will work quickly. Do you have a slow CPU, 5,400RPM drive, and a million files? Expect `updatedb` to take quite a while. If you're interested in knowing just how long it takes to run, preface `updatedb` with the `time` command, like this:

```
# time updatedb
```

When `updatedb` finishes, `time` tells you how long it took to get the `locate` database squared away. That is useful information to have in your head in case you ever need to use `updatedb` and you're in a hurry.



### Note

The `updatedb` command is exactly the same as running `slocate -u`, and `updatedb` is actually just a link to `slocate`, as you can easily see for yourself.

```
$ ls -l /usr/bin/updatedb
root root /usr/bin/updatedb -> slocate
```

## Searching Inside Text Files for Patterns

### **grep**

The `locate` command searches the names of files and directories, but it can't search inside those files. To do that, you use `grep`. Essentially, you give `grep` a pattern for which you want to search, point it at a file or a group of files (or even a whole hard drive) that you want to search, and then `grep` outputs a list of lines that match your pattern.

```
$ grep pain three_no_more_forever.txt
all alone and in pain
```

In this case you used `grep` to see if the word `pain` was in a file containing a poem by Peter Von Zer Muehlen titled "Three No More Forever." Sure enough, the word `pain` is in the file, so `grep` prints the line containing your search term on the terminal. But what if you want to look in several of Peter's poems at once? Wildcards to the rescue!

```
$ grep pain *
fiery inferno in space.txt:watch the paint peel,
three_no_more_forever.txt:all alone and in pain
the speed of morning.txt:of a Chinese painting.
8 hour a day.txt:nice paint job too
ghost pain.txt:Subject: ghost pain
```

Notice that `grep` finds all uses of the string `pain`, including `paint` and `painting`. Also pay attention to how `grep` shows you the filename for each file that contains the search term, as well as the line containing that term. So far, it's been pretty easy to search inside files with `grep`. So it's a perfect time to complicate matters, as you'll discover in the following sections.

## The Basics of Searching Inside Text Files for Patterns

In the previous section, you learned that `grep` works by looking

for the existence of a pattern in a group of files. Your first use of `grep` was extremely basic, but now you need to get a bit more complex, and to do that you need to understand the patterns for which `grep` searches. Those patterns are built using one of the most powerful tools in the Linux toolbox: regular expressions, or `regex`. To take full advantage of `grep`, you really need to grok `regex`; however, `regex` is a book all in itself, so we're only going to cover the basics here.

Tip

Want to learn more about regular expressions? You can search the Internet, and you'll find quite a bit of great stuff there, but Sams Teach Yourself Regular Expressions in 10 Minutes (by Ben Forta; ISBN: 0672325667) is a great book that'll really help you as you explore and learn `regex`.

One thing that confuses new users when they start playing with `grep` is that the command has several versions, as shown in [Table 9.1](#).

**Table 9.1. Different Versions of `grep`**

Interpret Pattern As	<code>grep</code> Command Option	Separate Command
Basic regular expression	<code>grep -G</code> (or <code>--basic-regexp</code> )	<code>grep</code>
Extended regular expression	<code>grep -E</code> (or <code>--extended-regexp</code> )	<code>egrep</code>
List of fixed strings, any of which can be matched	<code>grep -F</code> (or <code>--fixed-strings</code> )	<code>fgrep</code>
Perl regular expression	<code>grep -P</code> (or <code>--perl-regexp</code> )	Not applicable

To summarize this table, `grep` all by itself works with basic `regex`. If you use the `-E` (or `--extended-regexp`) option or the `egrep` command, you can use extended `regex`. Much of the time, this is probably what you'll want to do, unless you're performing a very simple search. Two more complicated choices are `grep` with the `-F` (or `--fixed-strings`) option or the `fgrep` command, which allows you to use multiple search terms that could be matched, and `grep` with the `-P` (or `--perl-regexp`) option, which allows Perl programming mavens to use that language's sometimes unique approach to `regex`.

Note

In this book, unless otherwise stated, we're using just plain `grep` for basic `regex`.

A few possible points of confusion need to be covered before you continue. If you're unclear about any of these, use the listed resources as a jumping-off point to learn more.

Wildcards are not equivalent to regex. Yes, both wildcards and regular expressions use the `*` character, for instance, but they have completely different meanings. Where certain characters (`?` and `*`, for example) are used as wildcards to indicate substitution, the same characters in regex are used to indicate the number of times a preceding item is to be matched. For instance, with wildcards, the `?` in `c?t` replaces one and only one letter, matching `cat`, `cot`, and `cut`, for instance, but not `ct`. With regex, the `?` in `c[a-z]?t` indicates that the letters A through Z are to be matched both zero or one time(s), thereby corresponding to `cat`, `cot`, `cut`, and also `ct`.

### Tip

To learn more about differences between wildcards and regular expressions, see "What Is a Regular Expression" (<http://docs.kde.org/stable/en/kdeutils/KRegExpEditor/whatIsARegExp.html>), "Regular Expressions Explained" ([www.castaglia.org/proftpd/doc/contrib/regexp.html](http://www.castaglia.org/proftpd/doc/contrib/regexp.html)), and "Wildcards Gone Wild" ([www.linux-mag.com/2003-12/power\\_01.html](http://www.linux-mag.com/2003-12/power_01.html)).

Another potentially confusing thing about `grep` is that you need to be aware of special characters in your `grep` regex. For instance, in regular expressions, the string `[a-e]` indicates a regex range, and means any one character matching a, b, c, d, or e. When using `[` or `]` with `grep`, you need to make it clear to your shell whether the `[` and `]` are there to delimit a regex range or are part of the words for which you're searching. Special characters of which you need to keep aware include the following:

```
. ? [ ] ^ $ | \
```

Finally, there is a big difference between the use of single quotes and double quotes in regex. Single quotes (`'` and `'`) tell the shell that you are searching for a string of characters, while double quotes (`"` and `"`) let your shell know that you want to use shell variables. For instance, using `grep` and regex in the following way to look for all usages of the phrase "hey you!" in a friend's poetry wouldn't work:

```
$ grep hey you! *
grep: you!: No such file or directory
txt/pvzm/8 hours a day.txt:hey you! let 's run!
txt/pvzm/friends & family.txt:in patience they wait
txt/pvzm/speed of morning.txt:they say the force
```

Because you simply wrote out "hey you!" with nothing around it, `grep` was confused. It first looked for the search term `hey` in a file called `"you!"` but it was unsuccessful, as that isn't the actual name of a file. Then it searched for `hey` in every file contained in the current working directory, as indicated by the `*` wildcard, with three good results. It's true that the first of those three contained the phrase you were searching for, so in that sense your search worked, but not really. This search was crude and does not always deliver the results you'd like. Let's try again.

This time you'll use double quotes around your search term. That should fix the problem you had when you didn't use anything at all.

```
$ grep " hey you! " *
bash: ! " *: event not found
```

Even worse! Actually, the quotation marks also cause a big problem and give even worse results than you just saw. What happened? The `!` is a shell command that references your command history. Normally you'd use

the `!` by following it with a process ID (PID) number that represents an earlier command you ran, like `!264`.

Here, though, `bash` sees the `!`, looks for a PID after it, and then complains that it can't find an earlier command named `"*` (a double quote, a space, and an asterisk), which would be a very weird command indeed.

It turns out that quotation marks indicate that you are using shell variables in your search term, which is in fact not what you wanted at all. So double quotes don't work. Let's try single quotes.

```
$ grep 'hey!' *
txt/pvzm/8 hours a day.txt:hey you! let 's run!
```

Much better results! The single quotes told `grep` that your search term didn't contain any shell variables, and was just a string of characters that you wanted to match. Lo and behold, there was a single result, the exact one you wanted.

The lesson? Know when to use single quotes, when to use double quotes, and when to use nothing. If you're searching for an exact match, use single quotes, but if you want to incorporate shell variables into your search term (which will be rare indeed), use double quotes. If you're searching for a single word that contains just numbers and letters, though, it's safe to leave off all quotes entirely. If you want to be safe, go ahead and use single quotes, even around a single word it can't hurt.

## Search Recursively for Text in Files

**-R**

The `*` wildcard allows you to search several files in the same directory, but to search in several subdirectories at once, you need the `-R` (or `--recursive`) option. Let's look for the word `hideous`, a favorite of horror writers of the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, amongst a collection of old-fashioned (but still wonderful!) tales.

```
$ grep -R hideous *
machen/great_god_pan.txt:know, not in
your most fantastic, hideous dreams can you have
machen/great_god_pan.txt:hideously
contorted in the entire course of my practice, and I
machen/great_god_pan.txt:death was
horrible. The blackened face, the hideous form upon
lovecraft/Beyond the Wall of Sleep.txt:some hideous
but unnamed wrong, which
lovecraft/Beyond the Wall of Sleep.txt:blanket over
the hideous face, and awakened the nurse.
lovecraft/Call of Cthulhu.txt:hideous a chain. I
think that the professor, too, intended to
lovecraft/Call of Cthulhu.txt:voodoo meeting;
and so singular and hideous were the rites
lovecraft/Call of Cthulhu.txt:stated, a very
crude bas-relief of stone, comprising a hideous...
```

### Tip

Of course, if you get too many results, you should pipe the results to `less`, as you did previously with `locate` in "[Manage Results Received When Searching a Database of Filenames](#)":

```
$ grep -R hideous * | less
```

Another tactic would be to send the output of the command into a text file, and then open that file in whatever text editor you prefer:

```
$ grep -R hideous * > hideous_in_horror.txt
```

That's a great way to search and store your results in case you need them later.

## Search for Text in Files, Ignoring Case

### -i

By default, searches performed with `grep` are case-sensitive. In the previous section, you searched amongst H.P. Lovecraft stories for the word `hideous` (a favorite of that author). But what about `Hideous`?

```
$ grep Hideous h_p_lovecraft/*
h_p_lovecraft/the_whisperer_in_darkness.txt: them.
Hideous though the idea was, I knew...
```

Your earlier search for `hideous` found 463 results (wow!) and `Hideous` returned one. Is there any way to combine them? Yes, with the `-i` (or `--ignore-case`) option, which searches for both, and also searches for `HiDeOuS`, `HIDEOUS`, and all other possible combinations.

```
$ grep -i hideous h_p_lovecraft/*
h_p_lovecraft/Call of Cthulhu.txt:voodoo meeting;
and so singular and hideous were the rites
h_p_lovecraft/Call of Cthulhu.txt:stated, a very
crude bas-relief of stone, comprising a hideous
h_p_lovecraft/the_whisperer_in_darkness.txt: them.
Hideous though the idea was, I knew...
```

Keep in mind that you're probably increasing the number of results you're going to get, perhaps by an order of magnitude. If that's a problem, check the tip at the end of the previous section for some advice about dealing with it.

## Search for Whole Words Only in Files

**-w**

Think back to the earlier section "[The Basics of Searching Inside Text Files for Patterns](#)," in which you first learned about `grep`. You searched for the word `pain`, and `grep` obediently returned a list showing you where `pain` had been used.

```
$ grep pain *
fiery inferno in space.txt:watch the paint peel,
three_no_more_forever.txt:all alone and in pain
the speed of morning.txt:of a Chinese painting.
8 hour a day.txt:nice paint job too
ghost pain.txt:Subject: ghost pain
```

By default, `grep` searches for all occurrences of the string `pain`, showing you lines that contain `pain`, but also `paint` and `painting`. If `painless`, `Spain`, or `painstaking` had been in one of the files that were searched, those lines would have shown up as well. But what if you only wanted lines in which the exact word `pain` appeared? For that, use the `-w` (or `--word-regexp`) option.

```
$ grep -w pain *
three_no_more_forever.txt:all alone and in pain
ghost pain.txt:Subject: ghost pain
```

This option can really help narrow your search results when you receive too many to easily sort through.

## Show Line Numbers Where Words Appear in Files

**-n**

The `grep` command shows you the line containing the term for which you're searching, but it doesn't really tell you where in the file you can find that line. To find out the line number, utilize the `-n` (or `--line-number`) option.

```
$ grep -n pain *
fiery inferno in space.txt:56:watch the paint peel,
three_no_more_forever.txt:19:all alone and in pain
the speed of morning.txt:66:of a Chinese painting.
8 hour a day.txt:78:nice paint job too
ghost pain.txt:32:Subject: ghost pain
```

Now that you know the line numbers for each instance of the string `pain`, it is a simple matter to go directly to those lines in virtually any text editor. Nice!

## Search the Output of Other Commands for Specific Words

```
$ ls -l | grep 1960
```

The `grep` command is powerful when used by itself, but it really comes alive when you use it as a filter for the output of other programs. For instance, let's say you have all your John Coltrane MP3s organized in separate subfolders for each album (66 in all ... yes, Coltrane is that good), with the year at the beginning. A partial listing might look like this (the `-l` option is used with `ls` so there is one result on each line):

```
$ ls -l
1956_Coltrane_For_Lovers
1957_Blue_Train
1957_Coltrane_[Prestige]
1957_Lush_Life
1957_Thelonious_Monk_With_John_Coltrane
```

Now, what if you just wanted to see a list of the albums you own that Coltrane released in 1960? Pipe the results of `ls -l` to `grep`, and you'll get your answer in seconds.

```
$ ls -l | grep 1960
1960_Coltrane_Plays_The_Blues
1960_Coltrane's_Sound
1960_Giant_Steps
1960_My_Favorite_Things
```

After you start thinking about it, you'll find literally hundreds of uses for `grep` in this way. Here's another powerful one. The `ps` command lists running processes, while the `-f` option tells `ps` to give the full listing, with lots of information about each process, and the `-U` option, followed by a username, restricts the output to processes owned by that user. Normally `ps -fU scott` would result in a long list, too long if you're looking for information about a specific process. With `grep`, however, you can easily restrict the output.

### Note

To save space, some of the information you'd normally see with `ps` has been removed.

```
$ ps -fU scott | grep firefox
scott 17623 /bin/sh /opt/firefox/firefox
scott 17634 /opt/firefox/firefox-bin
scott 1601 grep firefox
```

The `ps` command lists all commands owned by the `scott` user (64, in fact), but pipes that output to `grep`, which lists only those lines that contain the word `firefox` in them. Unfortunately, the last line of output is erroneous: You only care about the actual Firefox program, not the search for `firefox` using `grep`. To hide the search for `firefox` in the `grep` results, try this instead:

```
$ ps -fU scott | grep [f]firefox
scott 17623 /bin/sh /opt/firefox/firefox
scott 17634 /opt/firefox/firefox-bin
```

Now your `grep` search term used a regex range, from `f` to `f`, that found `firefox` on those lines output by `ps` in which Firefox was running; however, it didn't match the line for `grep` because that line was actually `[f]irefox`, which wouldn't match. The `grep` command here can't match the original string `ps -ef | grep [f]irefox` because it contained `[` and `]`, and the `grep` search for `[f]irefox` resolves to searching for the exact word `firefox`. This is a bit confusing, but if you try it yourself and think about it a bit, it'll make some sense. At any rate, it works. Give it a try!

## See Context for Words Appearing in Files

### **-A, -B, -C**

When dealing with data, context is everything. As you've learned, `grep` outputs the actual line containing the search term, but you can also tell `grep` to include lines before and after the match. In the last section, "Search the Output of Other Commands for Specific Words," you used `grep` to work with a list of John Coltrane albums. One of his best was *A Love Supreme*. What three albums came out before that one? To get the answer, use the `-B` (or `--before-context=#`) option.

```
$ ls -l | grep -B 3 A_Love_Supreme
1963_Impressions
1963_John_Coltrane_&_Johnny_Hartman
1963_Live_At_Birdland
1964_A_Love_Supreme
```

If you want to find out what came after *A Love Supreme*, use the `-A` (or `--after-context=#`) option instead.

```
$ ls -l | grep -A 3 'A_Love_Supreme'
1964_A_Love_Supreme
1964_Coltrane's_Sound
1964_Crescent
1965_Ascension
```

To get the full historical context for *A Love Supreme*, try the `-C` (or `--context=#`) option, which combines before and after.

```
$ ls -l | grep -C 2 'A_Love_Supreme'
1963_John_Coltrane_&_Johnny_Hartman
1963_Live_At_Birdland
1964_A_Love_Supreme
1964_Coltrane's_Sound
1964_Crescent
```

This can be a bit confusing when you have more than one match in a file or group of files. For instance, Coltrane released several live albums, and if you want to see the albums just before and after those, you're going to get more complex results.



```
$ ls -l | grep -C 1 Live
1963_John_Coltrane_&_Johnny_Hartman
1963_Live_At_Birdland
1964_A_Love_Supreme
--
1965_Last_Trane
1965_Live_in_Seattle
1965_Major_Works_of_John_Coltrane
--
1965_Transition
1966_Live_at_the_Village_Vanguard_Again!
1966_Live_in_Japan
1967_Expression
1967_Olatunji_Concert_Last_Live_Recording
1967_Stellar_Regions
```

The `--` characters separate each matched group. The first two groups of results are obvious an album with Live in the title, preceded and followed by another album but the last section is a bit more complicated. Several albums containing the word Live in the title are right next to each other, so the results are bunched together. It might look a bit weird, but if you look at each instance of Live, you'll notice that the album before and after it is in fact listed.

The results are even more informative if you incorporate the `-n` option, which lists line numbers (because you're using `ls -l`, it's the line number of that `ls` listing).

```
$ ls -l | grep -n -C 1 Live
37-1963_John_Coltrane_&_Johnny_Hartman
38:1963_Live_At_Birdland
39-1964_A_Love_Supreme
--
48-1965_Last_Trane
49:1965_Live_in_Seattle
50-1965_Major_Works_of_John_Coltrane
--
52-1965_Transition
53:1966_Live_at_the_Village_Vanguard_Again!
54:1966_Live_in_Japan
55-1967_Expression
56:1967_Olatunji_Concert_Last_Live_Recording
57-1967_Stellar_Regions
```

Now `-C` gives you even more information about each line, as indicated by the character after the line number. `A :` indicates that the line matches, while a `-` means that it's a line before or after a match. Line 54, `1966_Live_in_Japan`, does double duty. It comes after `1966_Live_at_the_Village_Vanguard_Again!`, which should mean it has a `-`, but it is itself a match, which necessitates a `:`. Because a match is more important, that wins, and a `:` is ultimately used.

## Show Lines Where Words Do Not Appear in Files

**-v**

In the jazz world, John Coltrane still rules nearly 40 years after his death; likewise, Led Zeppelin is recognized as one of the great all-time rock 'n' roll bands. While they were together, Led Zeppelin released nine albums; however, many of them had the band's name in the album title (yes, the fourth release didn't really have a title, but most critics still recognize it as Led Zeppelin IV, so humor me). What if you want to see a list of MP3 folders containing Led Zeppelin's albums, but exclude those that actually have the words Led Zeppelin in the title? With the `-v` (or `--invert-match`) option, you can show only results that do not match the given pattern.

```
$ ls -l
1969_Led_Zeppelin
1969_Led_Zeppelin_II
1970_Led_Zeppelin_III
1971_Led_Zeppelin_IV
1973_Houses_Of_The_Holy
1975_Physical_Graffiti
1976_Presence
1979_In_Through_The_Out_Door
1982_Coda
$ ls -l | grep -v Led_Zeppelin
1973_Houses_Of_The_Holy
1975_Physical_Graffiti
1976_Presence
1979_In_Through_The_Out_Door
1982_Coda
```

With `-v`, you can really start to funnel your results to show only the exact items you need. You won't use `-v` all the time, but when you need it, you'll be glad it's available.

## List Files Containing Searched-for Words

**-l**

The `grep` command lists the lines containing the term for which you searched, but there might be times when you don't want to know the lines; instead, you want to know the names of the files that contain those matched lines. Previously in "[Search for Text in Files, Ignoring Case](#)," you looked for lines in H.P. Lovecraft stories that contained the word hideous. With the `-l` (or `--files-with-matches`) option, you can instead produce a list of those files (the `-i` is for case-insensitive searches, remember).

```
$ grep -il hideous h_p_lovecraft/*
h_p_lovecraft/Call of Cthulhu.txt
h_p_lovecraft/From Beyond.txt
h_p_lovecraft/The Case of Charles Dexter Ward.txt
```

This type of result is particularly useful when combined with other commands. For example, if you wanted to print a list of Lovecraft's stories containing the word hideous, you could combine `grep` with the `lpr` command as follows:

```
$ grep -il hideous h_p_lovecraft/* | lpr
```

Keep in mind that this command would print out the list of stories, not the stories themselves (there is a way to do that, though, and here's a hint: It involves `cat`).

## Search for Words Inside Search Results

### `grep` | `grep`

What if you want a list of albums released by John Coltrane in the last two years of his career? Simple enough.

```
$ ls -l | grep 196[6-7]
1966_Live_at_the_Village_Vanguard_Again!
1966_Live_in_Japan
1967_Expression
1967_Olatunji_Concert_Last_Live_Recording
1967_Stellar_Regions
```

The range `[5-7]` limits what would otherwise be a much longer list to the years 1966-1967. So far, so good, but what if you don't want to include any of his live albums (which would normally be a horrible mistake, but let's pretend here)? Here's how to do it:

```
$ ls -l | grep 196[6-7] | grep -v Live
1967_Expression
1967_Stellar_Regions
```

The `-v` option (which you learned about previously in "[Show Lines Where Words Do Not Appear in Files](#)") worked to strip out lines containing `Live`, but the really interesting thing here is how you took the output of `ls -l`, piped that to `grep 196[6-7]`, and then piped the output from that filter to a second instance of `grep`, this one with `-v Live`. The final results are exactly what you wanted: a list of all John Coltrane's albums, released between 1966-1967, that do not contain `Live` in the title. And that, my friends, shows you the power of the Linux command line in a nutshell!

## Conclusion

This chapter focused on two commands that you'll be using often: `locate` and `grep`. Though they're related, both assist the Linux user in finding files and information on his computer; they go about it in different ways. The `locate` command searches the names of files using a database of filenames to speed up its work, while the `grep` command looks in real time within the contents of files to pull out the search terms.

As cool as both `locate` and `grep` are, they're just the beginning when it comes to searching your file system. The next chapter is about one of the most powerful and versatile commands on a Linux system, a command that perfectly complements, and in fact can work in tandem with, `locate` and `grep`. That command? The mighty `find`. Turn that page and let's get going!

## Chapter 10. The `find` Command

In the last chapter, we covered commands that let you search for files (`locate`) and data within files (`grep`). The third command in the powerful triumvirate is `find`. While `locate` searches a database for files, which makes it fast but dependent upon a constantly updated database, `find` searches for files on the fly using criteria that you specify. Since `find` has to parse through your file structure, it's much slower than `locate`, but you can do things with `find` that aren't possible with `locate`.

Throughout this chapter, we look for files on an external hard drive that contains music mounted at `/media/music`. You can see that `find` allows us to slice and dice the files in a variety of ways.

### Find Files by Name

#### `find -name`

`find` is basically used to look for files by name, or part of a name (hence the `-name` option). By default, `find` is automatically recursive and searches down through a directory structure. Let's look for all MP3 files sung by the unique group the Shaggs on the music drive:

```
$ cd /media/music
$ find . -name Shaggs
./Outsider/Shaggs
```

What? This can't be correct! The `find` command found the folder, but not the songs. Why? Because we didn't use any wildcards, `find` looked for files specifically named "Shaggs." There is only one item with that precise name: the folder that contains the songs. (Since a folder is a special kind of file, it's counted!)

We need to use wildcards, but in order to prevent the shell from interpreting the wildcards in ways we don't intend, we need to surround what we're searching for with quotation marks. Let's try the search again with our new improvements:

```
$ find . -name "*Shaggs*"
./Outsider/Shaggs
./Outsider/Shaggs/Gimme_Dat_Ting_(Live).mp3
./Outsider/Shaggs/My_Pal_Foot_Foot.ogg
./Outsider/Shaggs/I_Love.mp3
./Outsider/Shaggs/Things_I_Wonder.ogg
```

We surrounded the wildcards with quotation marks; lo and behold, we found the folder and the files.

#### Note

Another option to `find` that you've been using without realizing it is `-print`. The `-print` option tells `find` to list the results of its search on the terminal. The `-print` option is on by default, so you don't need to include it when you run `find`.

Another important aspect of `find` is that the format of your results is dependent upon the path searched. Previously, we used a relative path, so our results were given to us as relative paths. What would happen if we used an absolute pathone that begins with a `/` instead?

```
$ find / -name "*Shaggs*"
/music/Outsider/Shaggs
/music/Outsider/Shaggs/Gimme_Dat_Ting_(Live).mp3
/music/Outsider/Shaggs/My_Pal_Foot_Foot.ogg
/music/Outsider/Shaggs/I_Love.mp3
/music/Outsider/Shaggs/Things_I_Wonder.ogg
```

If you search using a relative path, your results use a relative path; if you search using an absolute path, your results use an absolute path. We'll see other uses of this principle later in the chapter. For now, just keep this important idea in mind.

#### Note

To find out more about the Shaggs, see [www.allmusic.com/cg/amg.dll?p=amg&sql=11:qyk9kett7q7q](http://www.allmusic.com/cg/amg.dll?p=amg&sql=11:qyk9kett7q7q), or just search [www.allmusic.com](http://www.allmusic.com) for "Shaggs." You haven't lived until you've played "My Pal Foot Foot" at your next party!

## Find Files by Ownership

### **`find -user`**

In addition to searching for files by name, you can also search for files by owner. Do you want to find the files on the music drive owned by `scott`? Use `find` with the `-user` option, followed by the user name (or the user number, which you can find in `/etc/passwd`):

```
$ find . -user scott
```

Whoa! There are way too many results! It might be easier to look for files that are not owned by `scott`. To do so, put a `!` in front of the option you wish to reverse:

#### Note

In order to conserve space, some of the data you'd normally see with `ls -l` has been removed.

```
$ find . ! -user scott
./Outsider/Wing/01_-_Dancing_Queen.mp3
$ ls -l ./Outsider/Wing/01_-_Dancing_Queen.mp3
```

```
gus music ./Outsider/Wing/01_-_Dancing_Queen.mp3
```

Ah... one song by Wing is owned by `gus` instead of `scott`. To fix this problem, we need to use `chown` (covered in [Chapter 7](#), "Ownerships and Permissions"). Keep in mind that you can always use the `!` as a NOT operator (which is saying, for example, "find files where the user is not `scott`").

#### Note

Ah, Wing. First introduced to the world at large in an episode of South Park, her website can be found at [www.wingtunes.com](http://www.wingtunes.com). Wing's version of "Dancing Queen" is highly recommended, as is her rendition of "I Want to Hold Your Hand."

## Find Files by Group Ownership

### `file -group`

If an option that allows you to work with users is available for a command, you know that an option for groups is also probably present. The `find` command is no different: If you want to look for files owned by a particular group, just use `-group`, followed by the group's name or number. On the music drive, `scott` should be the owner and `music` should be the group. Let's see if there are any files that aren't in the `music` group:

```
$ find . ! -group music
./Disco/Brides_of_Funkenstein_-_Disco_to_Go.mp3
./Disco/Sister_Sledge_-_He's_The_Greatest_Dancer.mp3
./Disco/Wild_Cherry_-_Play_That_Funky_Music.mp3
./Electronica/New_Order/Bizarre_Love_Triangle.mp3
```

There are only four files out of a large number of files that aren't in the `music` group. Now we need to run `chgrp` (see [Chapter 7](#)) on these files to make everything on the drive exactly the same.

Notice that, once again, we used `!` to say, "Find the files that are not owned by the `music` group."

## Find Files by File Size

### `file -size`

Sometimes you'll want to find files based on their size. The `find` command can assist here as well. To specify a size, use the `-size` option, followed by a letter representing the size scheme you wish to use. If you don't provide a letter, the default is used; however, you should understand that you probably won't find what you want. If you don't append a letter after the

number, the default is in bytes (which is then divided by 512 and rounded up to the next integer). This is too much math. It's easier to use a suffix after the number that represents the size in more common terms, as shown in [Table 10.1](#).

**Table 10.1. Find Files by Size**

Suffix	Meaning
b	512-byte blocks (the default)
c	Bytes
k	Kilobytes (KB)
M	Megabytes (MB)
G	Gigabytes (GB)

Let's say we want to find every Clash song from their immortal album, *London Calling*, that is 10MB. (Yes, these were encoded at a super-high rate.) This job is easy enough with `find`:

```
$ cd Punk/Clash/1979_London_Calling
$ find . -size 10M
./07_-_The_Right_Profile.ogg
./08_-_Lost_In_The_Supermarket.ogg
./09_-_Clampdown.ogg
./12_-_Death_Or_Glory.ogg
```

That's weird. Only four songs? Here's where you need to understand a "gotcha" associated with using `find`: If you say 10M, then `find` looks for files that are exactly 10MB in size (rounded to 10MB, of course). If you want files larger than 10MB, you need to place a plus sign (+) in front of the given size; if you want files smaller than 10MB, use a minus sign (-) in front of the size:

```
$ find . -size +10M
./Jimmy_Jazz.ogg
./ Lover's_Rock.ogg
./ Revolution_Rock.ogg
```

Now we have a problem. Specifying 10M gives us files that are exactly 10MB, excluding those that are bigger, while specifying +10M gives us files that are larger than 10MB, excluding those that are exactly 10MB. How do we get both? If you want to learn how to obtain files that are 10MB and larger, see the "[Show Results If Either Expression Is True \(OR\)](#)" section later in this chapter.

### Tip

If you want to find large text files, use `c` after your number. As [Table 10.1](#) shows, `c` changes the search size to bytes. Every character in a text file is a byte, so an easy way to remember `c` is to associate it with the "characters" in a text file.

For instance, to find enormous text files, you can use this code:

```
$ find /home/scott/documents -size +500000c
```

## Find Files by File Type

### find -type

One of the most useful options for `find` is `-type`, which allows you to specify the type of object you wish to look for. Remember that everything on a UNIX system is a file (covered back in [Chapter 1](#), "[Things to Know About Your Command Line](#)," in the "[Everything Is a File](#)" section), so what you're actually indicating is the type of file you want `find` to ferret out for you. [Table 10.2](#) lists the file types you can use with `find`.

**Table 10.2. Finding Files by Type**

File Type Letter	Meaning
f	Regular file
d	Directory
l	Symbolic (soft) link
b	Block special file
c	Character special file
p	FIFO (First In First Out)
s	Socket

Let's say we want a quick list of the Steely Dan albums we have on the music drive. Since all songs are placed into directories by album, look for folders with `-type d`:

```
$ cd /media/music/Rock
$ find Steely_Dan/ -type d
Steely_Dan/
Steely_Dan/1980_Gaucht
Steely_Dan/1975_Katy_Lied
Steely_Dan/1974_Pretzel_Logic
Steely_Dan/1976_The_Royal_Scam
Steely_Dan/2000_Two_Against_Nature
Steely_Dan/1972_Can't_Buy_A_Thrill
Steely_Dan/1973_Countdown_To_Ecstasy
Steely_Dan/1977_Aja
```

This list is helpful, but since the name of every album directory begins with the year the album was released, we can sort by year for more precise information:

```
$ cd /media/music/Rock
$ find Steely_Dan/ -type d | sort
Steely_Dan/
```



```
Steely_Dan/1972_Can't_Buy_A_Thrill
Steely_Dan/1973_Countdown_To_Ecstasy
Steely_Dan/1974_Pretzel_Logic
Steely_Dan/1975_Katy_Lied
Steely_Dan/1976_The_Royal_Scam
Steely_Dan/1977_Aja
Steely_Dan/1980_Gauche
Steely_Dan/2000_Two_Against_Nature
```

It can be incredibly beneficial to use a pipe to filter the list you generate with `find`; as you get better with `find`, you'll see that you do this more and more.

## Show Results If the Expressions Are True (AND)

### `find -a`

A key feature of `find` is the ability to join several options to more tightly focus your searches. You can link together as many options as you'd like with `-a` (or `-and`). For example, if you want to list every song performed by the world's greatest rock 'n' roll band, the Rolling Stones, you might use just `-name "Rolling_Stones"` at first, but that wouldn't necessarily work. Some folders have `Rolling_Stones` in them, and there may be a soft link or two with the band's name in it as well. We, therefore, also need to use `-type f`. Combine them as follows:

```
$ find . -name "Rolling_Stones*" -a -type f
1968_Beggars_Banquet/03_-_Dear_Doctor.mp3
1968_Beggars_Banquet/01_-_Sympathy_For_The_Devil.mp3
1968_Beggars_Banquet/02_-_No_Expectations.mp3
1968_Beggars_Banquet/04_-_Parachute_Woman.mp3
1968_Beggars_Banquet/05_-_Jig-Saw_Puzzle.mp3
1968_Beggars_Banquet/06_-_Street_Fighting_Man.mp3
```

That's cool, but how many Stones tunes do we have? Pipe the results of `find` to `wc` (which stands for "word count"), but also use the `-l` option, which gives you the number of lines instead of the word count:

```
$ find . -name "Rolling_Stones*" -a -type f | wc -l
317
```

Three hundred and seventeen Rolling Stones songs. Sweet. In this case, you can always get what you want.

### Note

If you have no idea what that last sentence means, get yourself a copy of the album *Let It Bleed* now. Don't forget to play it loud.

## Show Results If Either Expression Is True (OR)

### **find -o**

Earlier, in the section "[Find Files by File Size](#)," we saw that we could use `find` to list every Clash song on London Calling that was exactly 10MB, and we could use `find` to list songs on London Calling that were more than 10MB, but we couldn't do both at the same time with `-size`. In the previous section, we saw that `-a` combines options using AND; however, we can also utilize `-o` (or `-or`) to combine options using OR.

So, in order to find songs from London Calling that are 10MB or larger, we use the following command:

```
$ cd London_Calling
$ find . -size +10M -o -size 10M
03_-_Jimmy_Jazz.ogg
07_-_The_Right_Profile.ogg
08_-_Lost_In_The_Supermarket.ogg
09_-_Clampdown.ogg
12_-_Death_Or_Glory.ogg
15_-_Lover's_Rock.ogg
18_-_Revolution_Rock.ogg
(25th_Anniversary)_-_18_-_Revolution_Rock.mp3
(25th_Anniversary)_-_37_-_Heart_And_Mind.mp3
(25th_Anniversary)_-_ 39_-_London_Calling_(Demo).mp3
```

Oops...we also got results from the 25<sup>th</sup> Anniversary release of London Calling as well, which we didn't want. We need to do two things: exclude results from the 25<sup>th</sup> Anniversary edition and make sure that our OR statement works correctly.

To exclude the 25<sup>th</sup> Anniversary songs, we add `! -name "*25*"` at the end of our command. To make sure that OR works, we need to surround it with parentheses, which combines the statements. However, you need to escape the parentheses with backslashes so the shell doesn't misinterpret them, and you also need to put spaces before and after your statement. The combination gives us this command:

```
$ cd London_Calling
$ find . \( -size +10M -o -size 10M \) ! -name
"*25*"
03_-_Jimmy_Jazz.ogg
07_-_The_Right_Profile.ogg
08_-_Lost_In_The_Supermarket.ogg
09_-_Clampdown.ogg
12_-_Death_Or_Glory.ogg
15_-_Lover's_Rock.ogg
18_-_Revolution_Rock.ogg
```

Perfect. Seven songs are 10MB or greater in size.

Note

Read about London Calling at Allmusic.com ([www.allmusic.com/cg/amg.dll?p=amg&sql=10:aeu1z82ajyvn](http://www.allmusic.com/cg/amg.dll?p=amg&sql=10:aeu1z82ajyvn)) or Pitchfork ([www.pitchforkmedia.com/record-reviews/c/clash/london-calling.shtml](http://www.pitchforkmedia.com/record-reviews/c/clash/london-calling.shtml)).

We can also use `-o` to find out how many songs we have on the music drive. We might start with this command, which we run from the root of `/media/music`, and which uses `-a` (be patient; we'll get to `-o`):

```
$ find . -name "*mp3*" -a -type f | wc -l
23407
```

Twenty-three thousand? That's not right. Ah, now it's obvious. We were only searching for mp3 files, and an enormous amount of songs was encoded in the superior Ogg Vorbis format, a patent-free, open source alternative to mp3. Let's look for mp3 or ogg files and count the results with `wc -l`:

```
$ find . \( -name "*mp3*" -o -name "*.ogg*" \) -a -type f | wc -l
41631
```

That sounds much better, but there are also some FLAC files on there. Let's add another `-o` to the mix:

```
$ find . \( -name "*mp3*" -o -name "*.ogg*" -o -name "*.flac*" \) -a -type f | wc -l
42187
```

Now that's more like it: 42,000 songs and growing!

## Show Results If the Expression Is Not True (NOT)

### **find -n**

We have already used `!` to negate expressions in earlier sections in this chapter (see "[Find Files By Ownership](#)" and "[Show Results If Either Expression Is True \(OR\)](#)"), but let's take another, longer look at this operator. In the previous section, we used `find` to determine how many mp3, ogg, and flac files we have on the music drive. But how many total files do we have on the drive?

```
$ find . -name "*" | wc -l
52111
```

Hmm...52,000 total files, but only 42,000 are mp3, ogg, or flac. What are the others? Let's construct a `find` command that excludes files that end in `.mp3`, `.ogg`, or `.flac` while also excluding directories. Wrap these four conditions in parentheses, and then place `!` before the command to indicate our wish to negate these items and instead look for things that do not match these specifications:

```
$ find . ! \( -name "*mp3*" -o -name "*.ogg*" -o -name "*.flac*" -o -type d \)
./Folk/Joan_Baez/Joan_Baez_-_Imagine.m3u
```

```
./500_Greatest_Singles/singles.txt
./Blues/Muddy_Waters/Best_Of.m3u
./Blues/Robert_Johnson/Hellhound_On_My_Trail.MP3
./Blues/Johnny_Winter/Johnny_Winter.m3u [Results
truncated for length]
```

Now we have the answer, or at least we're starting to get an answer. We have m3u (playlist) files, text files, and files that end in MP3 instead of mp3 (we also have JPEGs, GIFs, and even music videos). The `find` command, like all of Linux, is case-sensitive (as discussed in [Chapter 1](#)), so a search for `"*mp3"` will not turn up songs that have the .MP3 suffix. Is there any quick and easy way to change these files so that they have the correct, lowercase extension? Sure. And we'll use `find` to do it.

## Execute a Command on Every Found File

### `find -exec`

Now we enter the area in which `find` really shows off its power: the ability to execute commands on the files that it, uh, finds. After listing the options that help narrow down your search such as `-name`, `-type`, or `userappend` `-exec` along with the commands you want to run on each individual file. You use the symbols `{ }` to represent each file, and end your command with `\` to escape the semicolon so your shell doesn't interpret it as an indication of command stacking (which we discussed in [Chapter 4](#), "Building Blocks").

In the previous section, for example, we discovered that some of the files on the music drive ended with MP3. Since we prefer lowercase extensions, we need to convert all instances of MP3 to mp3 to make the files consistent. We can do this with the `-exec` option for `find`. First, let's verify that there are files that end with MP3:

```
$ find . -name "Robert_Johnson*MP3"
./Blues/Robert_Johnson/Judgment_Day.MP3
./Blues/Robert_Johnson/Dust_My_Broom.MP3
./Blues/Robert_Johnson/Hellhound_On_My_Trail.MP3
```

Let's use `find` with `-exec` to change the file extension. The program we can use with `-exec` is `rename`, which changes parts of filenames:

```
$ find . -name " *MP3 " -exec rename 's/MP3/mp3/g' {} \;
```

The `rename` command is followed with instructions for the name change in this format: `s/old/new/g`. (The `s` stands for "substitute," while the `g` stands for "global.") Now let's see if our command works:

```
$ find . -name "Robert_Johnson*MP3"
$ ls -l Blues/Robert_Johnson/
Hellhound_On_My_Trail.mp3
Judgment_Day.mp3
Dust_My_Broom.mp3
Love_in_Vain.mp3
Me_and_the_Devil_Blues.mp3
```

The command appears to work. Let's try a similar process with another situation. In the previous section, we noticed that many of the results discovered were `m3u`, or playlist, files. Unfortunately, many of these files had spaces in the filenames, which we try to avoid. Let's first generate a list of `m3u` files that have spaces. We can search for `* *m3u`, which uses wildcards around a space to discover files that include spaces in their name:

```
$ find . -name "* *m3u"
./Christmas/Christmas With The Rat Pack.m3u
./Christmas/Holiday_Boots_4_Your_Sockings.m3u
./Classical_Baroque/Handel/Chamber Music.m3u
./Classical_Opera/Famous Arias.m3u
./Doo_Wop/Doo Wop Box.m3u
./Electronica/Aphex_Twin/I Care Because You Do.m3u
```

Now let's find `m3u` files with spaces in their names; when one is found, we can run `rename` against it. We're substituting `"\"` (we escape the space so that `find` understands what we're looking for and the shell doesn't get confused) with `"_"` to fix the problem:

```
$ find . -name "* *m3u" -exec rename 's/\ /_/g' {}
\;
$ find . -name "* *m3u"
$
```

The command worked as planned.

#### Note

Note that before running commands on the files, we must always first figure out which files are going to be changed. That's just good prudence. You don't want to change the wrong files!

## Print Find Results into a File

### `find -fprint`

Every time we've used `find`, we have assumed that the `-print` option isn't necessary because it's on by default. If you want to print to a file instead of the terminal, you use the `-fprint` option, followed by the name of the file you want to create.

```
[View full width]$ find . ! \( -name "*.mp3" -o -name "*.ogg" -o -name "*.flac" -o -type d \) -fprint
  non_music_files.txt
$ cat non_music_files.txt
./Folk/Joan_Baez/Joan_Baez_-_Imagine.m3u
./500_Greatest_Singles/singles.txt
./Blues/Muddy_Waters/Best_Of.m3u
./Blues/Robert_Johnson/Hellhound_On_My_Trail.MP3
./Blues/Johnny_Winter/Johnny_Winter.m3u
```

You can then use these results in scripts, or send them to a printer if that would be helpful.

## Conclusion

As you can tell, you can do a lot with `find`. There are still plenty of things that `find` can do, so you really should look at `man find` or read several of the excellent tutorials available on the World Wide Web that cover the more arcane yet useful aspects of the command. You can use `find` to search for and list files and folders using an amazing variety of options. It really becomes invaluable, however, when you use the `-exec` option to run commands on the discovered files, or when you pipe the output to other commands. This is one of the greatest commands available to you on your Linux box, so start using it!

# Part IV: Environment

[Chapter 11. Your Shell](#)

[Chapter 12. Monitoring System Resources](#)

[Chapter 13. Installing Software](#)

## Chapter 11. Your Shell

So far in this book you've been running commands in your bash shell but you haven't focused on the shell itself. In this chapter, you look at two commands that affect your use of the shell: `history`, which lists everything you've entered on the command line, and `alias`, which allows you to create shortcuts for commands. Both are useful, and both can save you lots of time when you're using the command line. Laziness is a good thing when it comes to computer users, and these are definitely two commands that will help you be as lazy as possible when using your Linux box.

### View Your Command-Line History

#### **history**

Every time you type a command in your shell, that command is saved in a file named `.bash_history` in your home directory (the dot in front of the filename means that it's hidden unless you use `ls -a`). By default, that file holds the last 500 lines entered on the command line. If you want to view that list of commands, just enter the `history` command.

```
$ history
496  ls
497  cd rsync_ssh
498  ls
499  cat linux
500  exit
```

Because you're looking at 500 results, they're going to stream by so fast that you can't see any until you get to the end. Want to step through the results one screen at a time? Turn to your old friend `less`:

```
$ history | less
```

Now you can jump through your results much more easily.

Caution

Now you understand why you need to be careful typing passwords and other sensitive information on the command line: Anyone who can view your `.bash_history` file is able to see those passwords. Be careful and think about what you enter directly on the command line!

## Run the Last Command Again

!!

If you want to run the last command you used a second time, enter two exclamation points. That looks in the history file and runs the last command in the list.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ !!
pwd
/home/scott
```

Notice that you first see the actual command that's going to run, and then the results of that command. This is a truly useful way to have your computer do tedious work for you.

## Run a Previous Command Using Numbers

![##]

When you run `history`, it automatically places a number in front of every previous command. If you'd like to run a previous command and you know the number that `history` has assigned to it, just enter an exclamation point immediately followed by that command's history number, and it will run again.

```
$ pwd
/home/scott
$ whoami
scott
$ !499
pwd
/home/scott
```

If you're unsure about the number, run `history` again to find out. Be aware that the `pwd` command in this example was number 499 the first time, but after I ran it again using `!499`, it became 498 because it was pushed down on the list by my new command.



## Run a Previous Command Using a String

### !**[string]**

The capability to run a command again by referencing its number is nice, but it requires that you know the command's number in `history`, which can be tedious to discover (piping the output of `history` to `grep` would help, but it's still not optimal). Often a better way to reference a previously entered command is by the actual command's name. If you follow the exclamation point by the first few letters of that command, your shell runs the first command it finds when looking backward in `.bash_history`.

```
$ cat /home/scott/todo
Buy milk
Buy dog food
Renew Linux Magazine subscription
$ cd /home/scott/pictures
$ !cat
cat /home/scott/todo
Buy milk
Buy dog food
Renew Linux Magazine subscription
```

If the `cat` command is found three times in your history at 35 (`cat /home/scott/todo`), 412 (`cat /etc/apt/sources.list`), and 496 (`cat /home/scott/todo`) and you enter `!cat`, the one found at 496 is the one that runs. If you want to run the `cat` found at 412, you need to run either `!412` or follow the exclamation mark with enough information so it can tell you're referencing the command listed as 412.

```
$ !cat /etc
cat /etc/apt/sources.list
deb http://us.archive.ubuntu.com/ubuntu breezy main restricted
deb-src http://us.archive.ubuntu.com/ubuntu breezy main restricted
```

Because humans have a far easier time remembering words instead of numbers, you'll probably end up using this method for invoking past commands. If you're ever unsure, run `history` and take a look.

## Display All Command Aliases

### **alias**

If you use a command all the time, or if a command is just particularly long and onerous to type, it behooves you to make that command an alias. After you've created an alias, you type its name, and the command referenced by the alias runs. Of course, if a command is particularly complicated or involves several lines, you should instead turn it into a script or function. But for small things, aliases are perfect.

Aliases are stored in a file in your home directory. You might find them in `.bashrc`, but more likely (or more properly, rather) they're in `.bash_aliases`. Most Linux distributions come with several aliases already defined for you; to see that list, just enter `alias` on the command line.

```
$ alias
alias la= 'ls -a'
```

```
alias ll= 'ls -l'
```

Most distributions purposely keep the default aliases to a minimum. It's up to you to add new ones, as you'll shortly see.

## View a Specific Command Alias

**alias [alias name]**

After you've defined several aliases, it can be hard to find a specific one if you type in the `alias` command. If you want to review what a specific alias does, just follow `alias` by the name of the specific alias about which you want to learn more.

```
[View full width]$ alias wgetpage
alias wgetpage= 'wget --html-extension --recursive --convert-links --page-requisites
--no-parent $1'
```

Now you know exactly what the `wgetpage` alias does, quickly and easily.

Note

You'll learn more about `wget` in [Chapter 15, "Working on the Network."](#)

## Create a New Temporary Alias

**alias [alias]= '[command]'**

If you find yourself typing a command over and over again, maybe it's time to make it an alias. For instance, to see just the subdirectories in your current working directory, you'd use `ls -d */`. To create a temporary alias for that command, use the following:

```
$ ls -d */
by_pool/  libby_pix/  on_floor/
$ alias lsd='ls -d */'
$ lsd
by_pool/  libby_pix/  on_floor/
```

You should realize a couple of things about using `alias` in this way. Your alias name can't have an `=` in it, which makes sense, because it's immediately followed by an `=` when you're defining it. You can, however,

have an = in the actual alias itself. Also, an alias created in this fashion only lasts as long as this shell session is active. Log out, and your alias is gone.

Want to create an alias that lasts past when you log out? Then read the next section, "[Create a New Permanent Alias](#)."

## Create a New Permanent Alias

```
alias [alias name]= '[command]'
```

If you want your aliases to stick around between shell sessions, you need to add them to the file your shell uses to store aliases. Most of the time that file is either `.bashrc` or `.bash_aliases`; in this case, you're going to use `.bash_aliases`. No matter which file it is, be careful editing it, as you can cause yourself problems later when logging in. If you want to be really careful, create a backup of the file before editing it. Better safe than sorry.

### Note

How can you find out which file you should use? Simple: Type `ls -a ~`. If you see `.bash_aliases`, use that; otherwise, look in `.bashrc` and see if other aliases are defined in there. If you don't see any aliases in there, take a look at `.profile`, which is occasionally used.

To add an alias to `.bash_aliases`, open it with your favorite text editor and add a line like the following:

```
alias lsd= 'ls -d */'
```

The same rule discussed in "[Create a New Temporary Alias](#)" applies here as well: Your alias name can't have an = in it. After adding your alias to `.bash_aliases`, save the file and close it. But the alias doesn't work yet. The `.bash_aliases` file (or `.bashrc` if that's what you used) needs to be reloaded for the new alias to work. You can do this in two ways. You can either log out and then log in again, which is a pain and not recommended, or you can just reload the file by running this command:

```
$ . .bash_aliases
```

That's a dot, followed by a space, followed by the name of the file, which begins with a dot. Now your new alias will work. Because you have to reload the file every time you add an alias, it's a good idea to add several at a time to lessen the hassle.

## Remove an Alias

### **unalias**

All good things must come to an end, and sometimes an alias outlives its usefulness. To remove an alias, use the `unalias` command.

```
$ ls -d */
by_pool/  libby_pix/  on_floor/
$ alias lsd= 'ls -d */'
$ lsd
by_pool/  libby_pix/  on_floor/
$ unalias lsd
$ lsd
$
```

Note, though, that this command only works permanently for temporary shell aliases, discussed previously in ["Create a New Temporary Alias."](#) The `lsd` alias in the previous example is gone for good. If you use the `unalias` command on an alias found in `.bash_aliases`, it too will be gone, but only as long as you're logged in. When you log out and log back in, or reload `.bash_aliases`, the alias is back.

To remove aliases from `.bash_aliases`, you need to edit the file and manually remove the line containing the alias. If you think there's a chance you might want to reuse the alias again sometime, just put a pound sign (which comments it out) in front of the alias, like this:

```
# alias lsd= 'ls -d */'
```

Save `.bash_aliases`, reload it with the `. .bash_aliases` command, and the alias won't work any longer. But if you ever need it again, open `.bash_aliases`, remove the pound sign, save and reload the file, and it's good to go again.

## Conclusion

One of your goals as a Linux user should be reducing the amount of characters you have to type to accomplish your goals. The original developers of Unix were strong believers in that concept—that's why you enter `ls` instead of `list` and `mkdir` instead of `makedirectory`.

The commands you've learned about in this chapter—`history` and `alias`—both aid in that process. Tired of typing a long and complicated command? Reference it with `history`, or create an alias for it. Either way, you'll save keystrokes, and your keyboard (and, more importantly, your hands and wrists) will thank you for it.

## Chapter 12. Monitoring System Resources

A good computer user has to be a bit of a systems administrator, always checking the health of her machine to make sure that everything is running smoothly. To help achieve that goal, Linux has several commands to

monitor system resources. In this chapter, you're going to look at several of those commands. Many of them have multiple uses, but all in the best Unix tradition of small tools that solve a single task well are especially good at one particular aspect of system monitoring. Their tasks range from keeping track of the programs running on your computer (`ps` and `top`) to ending errant processes (`kill`) to listing all open files (`ls -lsof`) to reporting your system's usage of RAM (`free`) and hard disk space (`df` and `du`). Learn these tools well. You'll find yourself using them in all sorts of situations.

## View All Currently Running Processes

### `ps aux`

Every once in a while a program you're running locks up and stops responding, requiring that you close it. Or you might want to know what programs a certain user is running. Or you might just want to know about the processes currently running on your machine. In any of those cases and many others, you want to use the `ps` command that lists open processes on your computer.

Unfortunately, `ps` has many versions, and they have different types of options. They can even have different meanings, depending on whether those options are preceded by a hyphen, so that `u` and `-u` mean completely different things. Up to now, this book has been pretty strict about preceding all options with a hyphen, but for `ps`, it's not, as it makes things a bit easier and more uniform.

To see all the processes that any user is running on your system, follow `ps` with these options: `a` (which means all users), `u` (user-oriented, or show the user who owns each process), and `x` (processes without controlling ttys, or terminal screens, another way of saying "show every process"). Be forewarned that a fairly long list is going to zoom by on your screen: 132 lines on this computer.

```
[View full width]$ ps aux
USER      PID    %CPU   %MEM    VSZ   RSS TTY      STAT   START   TIME   COMMAND
scott    24224    4.1    4.2  1150440  44036 ?        R      11:02   12:03  /home/scott/.cxoffice
        /bin/wine-preloader
scott     5594    0.0    0.1    3432    1820 pts/6 S+    12:14   0:00  ssh    scott@humbug.
        machine.com
scott    14957    0.3    7.5   171144  78628 ?        Sl     13:01   0:35  /usr/lib/openoffice2
        /program/soffice.bin -writer
scott    12369    0.0    0.0         0         0 ?        Z      15:43   0:00  [wine-preloader] <defunct>
scott    14680    0.0    0.1    3860    1044 pts/5 R+    15:55   0:00  ps aux
```

The `ps` command gives you a lot of information, including the user who owns the process, the unique process ID number (PID) that identifies the process, the percentage of the CPU (%CPU) and memory (%MEM) that the process is using, the current status (STAT) of the process, and the name of the process itself.

The STAT column can have different letters in it, with the following being the most important:

STAT Letter	Meaning
R	Running

S	Sleeping
T	Stopped
Z	Zombie

A Z is bad news because it means that the process has basically hung and cannot be stopped (fortunately, it does not mean that it will try to eat your brain). If you're having a problem with a program and `ps` indicates that it has a status of Z, you're probably going to have to reboot the machine to completely kill it.

Because `ps aux` provides you with a lot of data, it can be difficult to find the program for which you're searching.

Piping the output of `ps aux` to `grep` can be an easy way to limit the results to a particular command.

```
$ ps aux | grep [f]irefox
scott  25205  0.0 0.0      4336      8  ?        S Feb08 0:00 /bin/sh /opt/firefox/firefox
scott  25213  1.1 10.9    189092 113272  ?        Rl Feb08 29:42 /opt/firefox/firefox-bin
```

Now you know just the instances of Firefox running on this machine, including who's running the program, how much of a load on the machine that program is, and how long that program has been running. Useful!

### Tip

Why did you search for `[f]irefox` instead of `firefox`? To find the answer, take a look in [Chapter 9](#), "Finding Stuff: Easy," in the "Search the Output of Other Commands for Specific Words" section.

## View a Process Tree

### `ps axjf`

In the Linux world, processes don't just appear out of thin air. Often, starting one program starts other programs. All processes on a Linux system, for instance, ultimately come from `init`, the mother of all processes, which always has a PID of 1. The `ps` command can provide you with a text-based representation of this process tree so you can visually see what processes have spawned others. To see the process tree, use the `a`, `u`, and `x` options, used in the previous section, along with the `f` (the evocatively named ASCII art forest) option.

### Note

Normally you'd see the following columns:

```
PPID PID PGID SID TTY TPGID STAT UID TIME COMMAND
```

In the interests of making the command tree easier to understand, most of the columns you'd actually see with `ps axuf` have been removed in the following code listing.

```
$ ps axuf
PPID  PID  COMMAND
    1   7558 /usr/sbin/gdm
  7558  7561  \_ /usr/sbin/gdm
  7561  7604  \_ /usr/X11R6/bin/X :0
  7561  8225  \_ /bin/sh /usr/bin/startkde
  8225  8279  \_ /usr/bin/ssh-agent
  8225  8341  \_ kwrapper ksmserver
    1   8316 kdeinit Running...
  8316 10842 \_ konqueror [kdeinit] --silent
  8316 29663 \_ quanta
  8316 30906 \_ /usr/bin/kwrite /home/scott/analysis
  8316 17893 \_ /usr/lib/opera/9.0-20060206.1/opera
17893 17960 | \_ /usr/lib/opera/pluginwrapper
17893 17961 | \_ /usr/lib/opera/plugincleaner
```

Note that `ps axjf` introduces a key new column, `PPID`. `PPID`, the Parent Process ID number, is the number of the process that spawned the `PID`. Armed with the `PID` or `PPID`, you can end runaway processes, as you'll see soon in ["End a Running Process."](#)

## View Processes Owned by a Particular User

### `ps U [username]`

Up to now you've been looking at how `ps` gives you a list of all processes on your system. If you want to limit the results to those owned by a single user, simply use the `U` option, followed by the username or number.

```
$ ps U scott
  PID  TTY  STAT   TIME COMMAND
14928  ?    S      0:00 /opt/ooo2/program/soffice -writer
14957  ?    Sl     0:42 /opt/ooo2/program/soffice.bin -writer
  4688 pts/4 S+     0:00 ssh scott@humbug.machine.com
26751  ?    Z      0:00 [wine-preloader] <defunct>
27955 pts/5 R+     0:00 ps U scott
```

Of course, `ps` doesn't include the username in the listing because it was already part of the command.

### Tip

Remember, if you don't know the user's number, just look in `/etc/passwd`. Find the username, and the user number is in the third column.

## End a Running Process

### kill

Sometimes a program goes rogue, and it won't react to normal attempts to close it. In the GUI, you click repeatedly on the Close button, but nothing happens, or, in the shell, you press Ctrl+C but it fails to stop a running command. When this happens, it's time for the `kill` command.

You can use several signals with the `kill` command, ranging from "Please shut yourself down, cleaning up your mess as you do so" to "Shut yourself down as soon as you can" to "Die now!" You're going to focus on the three most important. When you use `kill`, you can specify the intensity of the process's death with a number or a word, as [Table 12.1](#) shows.

Table 12.1. Common Signals Associated with `kill`

Signal Number	Signal Word	Meaning
-1	-HUP (hang up)	Controlling process has died. Shut down (if applied to a system service, reload configuration files and restart).
-15	-TERM	Terminate gracefully, cleaning up stray processes and files.
-9	-KILL	Stop whatever you're doing and die now!

Normally, you should first try `-15` (in fact, it's the default if you run `kill` without any option). That way, you give the program a chance to shut down any other programs depending upon it, close files opened by it, and so on. If you've been patient and waited a while ("a while" is completely subjective, of course), and the process is still running completely out of control or still failing to respond, you can bring out the big guns and use `-9`. The `-9` option is equivalent to yanking the rug out from under a running program, and while it does the job, it could leave stray files and processes littering your system, and that's never a good idea.

As for `-1`, or `-HUP`, that's primarily for services such as Samba or wireless connectivity. You won't use it much, but you should know what it means.

Here's what you would do if `gvim` (which normally behaves just fine; this is just for demonstration purposes) seemed to freeze on your system.

```
$ ps U scott
  PID TTY  STAT  TIME COMMAND
14928 ?    S      0:00 /opt/ooo2/program/soffice -writer
```



```

14957 ?      Sl      0:42 /opt/ooo2/program/soffice.bin -writer
 4688 pts/4 S+      0:00 ssh scott@humbug.machine.com
26751 ?      Z      0:00 [wine-preloader] <defunct>
27921 ?      Ss      0:00 /usr/bin/gvim
27955 pts/5 R+      0:00 ps U scott
$ kill 27921
$ ps U scott
  PID TTY  STAT  TIME COMMAND
14928 ?    S      0:00 /opt/ooo2/program/soffice -writer
14957 ?    Sl     0:42 /opt/ooo2/program/soffice.bin -writer
 4688 pts/4 S+     0:00 ssh scott@humbug.machine.com
26751 ?    Z     0:00 [wine-preloader] <defunct>
27955 pts/5 R+     0:00 ps U scott

```

To kill `gvim`, you use `ps` to find `gvim`'s PID, which in this case is 27921. Next you kill that PID (and remember that `kill` uses the `TERM` signal by default) and then check again with `ps`. Yes, `gvim` is no more.

### Note

Why didn't you kill PID 26751, which has a `STAT` of `Z`, indicating that it's a zombie? Because even `-9` doesn't work on a zombie it's already dead, hence the `kill` command won't work. A reboot is the only way to fix that (usually unimportant) problem.

## View a Dynamically Updated List of Running Processes

### `top`

On occasion you'll find that your Linux machine suddenly slows down, apparently for no reason. Something is running on your computer at full tilt, and it's using up the processor. Or perhaps you'll start running a command, only to find that it's using far more of your CPU's cycles than you thought it would. To find out what's causing the problem, or if you just want to find out what's running on your system, you could use `ps`, except that `ps` doesn't update itself. Instead, it provides a snapshot of your system's processes, and that's it.

The `top` command, on the other hand, provides a dynamically updated view of what's running on your system and how many system resources each process is using. It's a bit hard to see in a book because you can't see `top` update its display every second, but here's what you would see at one moment while `top` is running.

```

$ top
top - 18:05:03 up 4 days, 8:03, 1 user, load average: 0.83, 0.82, 0.97
Tasks: 135 total, 3 running, 126 sleeping, 2 stopped, 4 zombie
Cpu(s): 22.9% us, 7.7% sy, 3.1% ni, 62.1% id, 3.5% wa, 0.1% hi, 0.7% si
Mem:    1036136k total, 987996k used, 48140k free, 27884k buffers
Swap:   1012084k total, 479284k used, 532800k free, 179580k cached
  PID USER PR NI VIRT RES  SHR S %CPU %MEM TIME+  COMMAND
25213 scott 15 0 230m 150m 15m S 11.1 14.9 33:39.34 firefox-bin
 7604 root  15 0 409m 285m 2896 S 10.8 28.2 749:55.75 Xorg
 8378 scott 15 0 37084 10m 7456 S  1.0  1.1 13:53.99 kicker
 8523 scott 15 0 69416 13m 3324 S  0.7  1.3 63:35.14 skype
29663 scott 15 0 76896 13m 4048 S  0.7  1.3 13:48.20 quanta

```

The `top` command gives you a great deal of information about your system in the first five lines of its output, and then it focuses on listing each running process. Note that `top` automatically sorts the output by the numbers in the %CPU column, so as programs use more and then less of your processor, their position in `top` changes as well.

If you want to kill programs from within `top`, just press `k`. At the top of the listings, just after the line that begins with `Swap:`, you'll see the following:

```
PID to kill:
```

Enter the PID for the process you want to end (let's say 8026), press Enter, and you're asked what signal number (discussed in the previous ["End a Running Process"](#) section) you want to use:

```
Kill PID 8026 with signal [15]:
```

By default, `top` wants to use 15. If you're happy with that, just press Enter; if not, enter the signal number you want to use and then press Enter. A second or so later, that process will disappear from `top`.

To exit `top`, press `q`.

The `top` command is incredibly useful, and you'll find yourself turning to it often, just to find out what's happening on your Linux machine. When you have questions about your computer's activity, `top` often provides the answers.

## List Open Files

### `lsof`

[Chapter 1, "Things to Know About Your Command Line,"](#) discussed the fact that everything is a file to a Linux machine, including directories, network connections, and devices. That means that even though from your perspective you only have one file open a letter to your Mom your system actually has thousands of files open at any one time. That's right thousands. To see the complete list of those open files, use the `lsof` command (short for list open files).

Actually, don't. If you just run `lsof` by itself (to get the full list of results, you need to be root), you'll receive as output that list of thousands of files. On this system, there were 5,497 files open and being used. Still, `lsof` can be a useful way to get an idea of just how much is going on with your computer at any one time.

Piping the output of `lsof` to `less` gives you the results one screen at a time.

```
# lsof | less
COMMAND PID USER FD TYPE DEVICE SIZE NODE NAME
init      1 root cwd DIR 3,1      656    2 /
init      1 root rtd DIR 3,1      656    2 /
init      1 root txt REG 3,1    31608 2072 /sbin/init
```

Still, with 5,497 results, that's many screens to page through. You can also pipe the output of `lsof` to `grep`. As you'll see in the next few sections, however, `lsof` contains within itself ways to filter out the data you don't want to see so you can focus only on a particular subset of open files that interest you.

## List a User's Open Files

### `lsof -u`

If you want to look at the files a particular user has open (and remember that those include network connections and devices, among many others), add the `-u` option to `lsof`, followed by the username (remember that `lsof` must be run as root).

#### Note

In order to save space, some of the data you'd normally see when you run `lsof` has been removed in this and further examples.

```
# lsof -u scott
COMMAND    PID  USER  NAMEP
evolution  8603  scott  /home/scott/.evolution/addressbook/local/system/addressbook.db
opera      11638  scott  /usr/lib/opera/9.0/opera
opera      11638  scott  /usr/share/fonts/truetype/msttcorefonts/Arial-Bold.ttf
```

Even filtering out all users except one, you're left with 3,039 lines in this list. Still, some interesting items are here. For one, it appears that Evolution (an email and personal information manager program) is running all the time, without your knowledge or intention. Also, the Opera web browser is running, which is expected, and one of the web pages it's on is requiring the use of the Arial Bold font, among other files.

If you administer a box used by more than person, try out `lsof -u` for your users. You might find that they are running programs that they shouldn't. If you're the sole user on your Linux machine, try `lsof -u` on yourself; you might find that you're running programs of which you were unaware!

## List Users for a Particular File

### `lsof [file]`

In the previous section, you saw what files a particular user had open. Let's reverse that, and see who's using a particular file. To do so, simply follow `lsof` with the path to a file on your system. For instance, let's take a look at who's using the SSH daemon, used to connect remotely to this computer (remember that `lsof` must be run as root).

```
# lsof /usr/sbin/sshd
COMMAND  PID  USER  TYPE  NAME
sshd     7814  root   REG   /usr/sbin/sshd
sshd     10542  root   REG   /usr/sbin/sshd
sshd     10548  scott   REG   /usr/sbin/sshd
```

That's the result you wanted: two users, root and scott. If an unexpected user had shown up heresay, 4ackordoodyou'd know that you've been compromised.

#### Note

Yes, sshd is a program, but remember, that's from your human perspective. To Linux, /usr/sbin/sshd is just another file.

## List Processes for a Particular Program

### `lsof -c [program]`

In the previous section, you saw who was using /usr/sbin/sshd. The results you received, however, don't tell the whole story. Any particular program is actually comprised of calls to several (perhaps many) other processes, programs, sockets, and devices, all of which appear to Linux as more files. To find out the full universe of other files associated with a particular running program, follow `lsof` with the `-c` option, and then the name of a running (and therefore "open") program. For example, `lsof /usr/sbin/sshd` said that there were only two users and three open files associated with that exact file. But what about the entire sshd command?

```
# lsof -c sshd
COMMAND  PID  USER  NAME
sshd     10542  root   /lib/ld-2.3.5.so
sshd     10542  root   /dev/null
sshd     10542  root   192.168.0.170:ssh->192.168.0.100:4577 (ESTABLISHED)
sshd     10548  scott   /usr/sbin/sshd
sshd     10548  scott   192.168.0.170:ssh->192.168.0.100:4577 (ESTABLISHED)
```

In the preceding code, you can see a few of the 94 lines (representing 94 open files) somehow connected with the sshd program. One is a `.so` file (shared object, akin to a DLL on Windows), and a few even show you that a network connection has occurred between this and another machine (actually, that another machine on this network has connected via SSH to this machine; for more on that process, see ["Securely Log In to Another Computer"](#) in [Chapter 15](#), ["Working on the Network"](#)).

You can find out a tremendous amount by applying `lsof` to various commands on your computer; at the least, you'll learn just how complicated modern programs are. Try it out with the software you use every day, and you might gain a fresh appreciation for the programmers who worked hard to make it available to you.

## Note

The `lsuf` command has an amazing number of options, and you're only going to look at a tiny subset. The source code for `lsuf` includes a file named `00QUICKSTART` (that's two zeroes at the beginning) that is a tutorial for some of the command's more powerful features. Search Google for that filename and start reading.

## Display Information About System RAM

### **free**

Nowadays most computers come with hundreds of megabytes or even gigabytes of RAM, but it's still possible to find your machine slowing down due to a lot of memory usage or virtual memory swapping. To see the current state of your system's memory, use the `free` command.

```
$ free
      total    used    free   shared  buffers   cached
Mem:   1036136 995852 40284      0    80816 332264
-/+ buffers/cache:    582772 453364
Swap:  1012084 495584 516500
```

By default, `free` shows the results in kilobytes, the same as if you'd used the `-k` option. You can change that, however. The `-b` option shows you memory usage in bytes, and `-m` (which you should probably use most of the time) uses megabytes.

```
$ free -m
      total used free shared  buffers
cached
Mem:      1011    963   48      0      78    316
-/+ buffers/cache:    569   442
Swap:      988    483   504
```

From `free`'s output, you can see that this machine has 1011MB of available physical RAM (actually 1024MB, but `free` displays it as 1011MB because the kernel takes up the remaining 13MB, so it could never be made available for other uses). The first line makes it appear that 963MB of that is in use, leaving only 48MB of RAM free. There's nearly a gigabyte of swap, or virtual memory, in place, too, and about half of that, or 483MB, has already been used. That's how it appears, anyway.

It's not that simple, however. The important row is the middle one, labeled `-/+ buffers/cache`. Hard drives use buffers and cache to speed up access, and if a program needs that memory, it can be quickly freed up for that program. From the point of view of the applications running on this Linux machine, 442MB of memory is free right now for use, with 569MB cached but available if needed. And that's in addition to the swap space you have available. Linux is nothing if not efficient when it comes to managing memory.

## Tip

An excellent page with more information on free and Linux memory management can be found on the Gentoo Wiki, at [http://gentoo-wiki.com/FAQ\\_Linux\\_Memory\\_Management](http://gentoo-wiki.com/FAQ_Linux_Memory_Management). Even though it's purportedly for Gentoo (a unique Linux distribution), it still applies to all versions of Linux.

## Show File System Disk Usage

### df

The `free` command deals with the RAM you have on your system; likewise, the `df` command (think disk free) deals with the amount of hard drive space you have. Run `df`, and you get a list of the disk space that is available to, and used by, every mounted filesystem.

```
$ df
Filesystem 1Kblocks    Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/hda1   7678736  5170204   2508532  68% /
tmpfs       518068      0     518068   0% /dev/shm
tmpfs       518068    12588     505480   3% /lib/modules/2.6.12-10-386/volatile
/dev/hda2   30369948 24792784   5577164  82% /home
```

Before looking at these results in a more detail, let's make them a little easier to read. The `df` command shows results in kilobytes by default, but it's usually easier to comprehend if you instead use the `-h` (or `--human-readable`) option.

```
$ df -h
Filesystem Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
/dev/hda1  7.4G  5.0G  2.4G  68% /
tmpfs      506M      0   506M   0% /dev/shm
tmpfs      506M    13M  494M   3% /lib/modules/2.6.12-10-386/volatile
/dev/hda2  29G   24G  5.4G  82% /home
```

"Human-readable" (which is a wonderful term, by the way) means that kilobytes are indicated by K, megabytes by M, and gigabytes by G. You can see those last two in the preceding listing.

So what do the results mean? You have two partitions on the hard drive: `/dev/hda1`, mounted at `/`, and `/dev/hda2`, mounted at `/home`. The `/home` partition had 29GB allocated to it, of which 82% is currently used, leaving about 5.4GB free. It's not panic time yet when it comes to disk space for that partition, but a few more CDs worth of MP3s and it might be time to delete some unnecessary files.

The root partition, or `/`, has less space available: only 2.4GB out of 7.4GB. That partition isn't as likely to grow, however, because it contains programs and other relatively static files. Granted, `/var` is found there, and that's where software installers (as you'll discover in [Chapter 13, "Installing Software"](#)) and other files that change size and contents, such as logs, are located. But overall, there's still plenty of space left on that partition, especially if you're not planning to install enormous applications or start running a web or database server on this machine.

The other two partitions are both labeled as `tmpfs`, which means they are temporary file systems used by the virtual memory, or swap space, on your computer. When you shut down your computer, the contents of those

partitions disappear.

### Tip

For more on `tmpfs`, see the Wikipedia article at <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/TMPFS>.

## Report File Space Used by a Directory

### `du`

The `df` command tells you about your entire hard drive, but what if you just want to know how much space a directory and its contents are using? The `du` command (short for disk usage) answers that question. First you use the `cd` command to change directories to the directory in question, and then run `du`.

```
$ cd music
$ du
36582  ./Donald_Fagen
593985 ./Clash
145962 ./Hank_Mobley/1958_Peckin '_Time
128200 ./Hank_Mobley/1963_No_Room_For_Squares
108445 ./Hank_Mobley/1961_Workout
2662185.
```

As with `df`, results for `du` are given in kilobytes, but also like `df`, you can view them in a more comprehensible fashion with the `-h` (or `--human-readable`) option.

```
$ cd music
$ du -h
36M    ./Donald_Fagen
581M   ./Clash
143M   ./Hank_Mobley/1958_Peckin'_Time
126M   ./Hank_Mobley/1963_No_Room_For_Squares
106M   ./Hank_Mobley/1961_Workout
2.6G   .
```

This output shows you the space used by each subdirectory, but directories that contain other directories also show the total for those contents. Look at the `Hank_Mobley` directory, which takes up 374MB on this filesystem. That total comes from the three subdirectories contained within `Hank_Mobley` (since the actual amount in kilobytes was rounded to display megabytes, the totals are just a bit off); if the total for `Hank_Mobley` was substantially bigger than the total of its three subdirectories, that would mean that the `Hank_Mobley` directory contained within it several loose files that were outside of a subdirectory.

Finally, you get a total for the entire `music/` directory at the end: 2.6GB.

## Report Just the Total Space Used for a Directory

**du -s**

If you don't want information about all of a directory's subdirectories, it's possible to ask `du` to simply report back the grand total by using the `-s` option.

```
$ cd music
$ du -hs
2.6G .
```

Short and sweet.

## Conclusion

Virtually every command you've looked at in this chapter has GUIs. But if your system is non-responsive, if you're connecting to a machine via SSH (covered in [Chapter 15](#)) and can't use a GUI, or if you just want to use the speediest tool, you'll need to use the command line. The commands in this chapter are easy to remember, thanks to well-chosen names:

- `ps` (view running processes)
- `kill` (kill processes)
- `top` (top listing of running processes)
- `lsof` (list [ls] open files)
- `free` (free, or available, memory)
- `df` (disk free space)
- `du` (disk usage)

Practice with them on your computer, and don't forget to read the man pages for each one because this chapter could only cover a fraction of their capabilities. There are many options to several of them in particular, `ps`, `top`, and `lsof` that allow you to do some truly amazing detective work on the computers under your watch.

## Chapter 13. Installing Software

Linux distributions by default contain thousands of great software packages. Immediately after completing a basic install, you can surf the Net, write reports, create spreadsheets, view and manipulate images, and listen to music. Even with that plethora of software, you're still going to want to add new tools that you run across. Fortunately, Linux makes it easy to install new software onto your computer.

Conventional wisdom about Linux said you had to compile any software you wanted to install. You can still do that if you'd like (and many people do), but that's rarely necessary in this day and age. Instead, you can install any of thousands of packages easily and quickly using some simple tools.

You need to understand one important thing before proceeding, however. In the Linux world, software packages come in a variety of formats, with two in particular dominating: RPM and DEB (not surprisingly, those are the two we're going to cover in this chapter). RPM is used by distributions such as Red Hat (in fact, RPM stands for Red Hat Package Manager), Fedora Core, SUSE, and other RPM-based distributions. DEB is



used by Debian-based distributions such as Debian itself, K/Ubuntu, Linspire, Xandros, and many others. You should know how both work, but focus on the system that matches your distribution.

### Tip

For a great breakdown of the various package management systems and the distributions that use them, see DistroWatch's "Linux Distributions Facts and Figures: What Is Your Distribution's Package Management?," at <http://distrowatch.com/stats.php?section=packagemanagement>. Note that DEB leads the pack (note also that I'm biased because this is being written using K/Ubuntu, also known as "Debian Done Right").

## Install Software Packages for RPM-Based Distributions

```
rpm -ihv [package]
rpm -Uhv [package]
```

The `rpm` command installs software installers that end in `.rpm`, which seems entirely logical. To install an RPM package, you need to download it first. Let's use the industry-standard open-source network port scanner `nmap` as the example. You can download the RPM package for `nmap` from [www.insecure.org/nmap/download.html](http://www.insecure.org/nmap/download.html); after it's on your system, you simply run `rpm` along with three options: `-i` (for install), `-h` (to show hash marks so you can watch the progress of the install), and `-v` (be verbose and tell me what you're doing). The command, which must be run as root, would look like this:

```
# rpm -ihv nmap-4.01-1.i386.rpm
```

This is actually not the command you should run, however. A better choice is `-Uhv`, where `-U` stands for upgrade. Why is `-U` better than `-i`? Because `-i` only installs, while `-U` upgrades and installs. If a package already exists on your system and you're trying to put a newer one on your machine, `-U` performs an upgrade; if a package doesn't already exist on your system, `-U` notices that and instead installs it. Therefore, just use `-U` all the time, and it won't matter if you're upgrading or installing: `-U` does what needs to be done, and you won't need to worry about it.

```
# rpm -Uhv nmap-4.01-1.i386.rpm
Preparing... ##### [100%]
 1:nmap      ##### [100%]
```

If you want to install more than one RPM, just list them separated by spaces, one after the other:

```
# rpm -Uhv nmap-4.01-1.i386.rpm nmap-frontend-4.01- 1.i386.rpm
```

You can also use wildcards if you have many RPMs to install. For instance, if you have 20 `.rpm` files in a subdirectory named `software`, just run this command to install them all:

```
# rpm -Uhv software/*.rpm
```

### Caution

The `-U` option is always better, except when installing a kernel. Then you want to use `-i` instead. If you upgrade with `-U` and the new kernel doesn't work, you're in a world of hurt. On the other hand, if you install a new kernel with `-i`, the old one is still on your machine as a backup if the new one blows up.

## Remove Software Packages for RPM-Based Distributions

```
rpm -e [package]
```

Getting rid of installed RPMs is even easier than installing them. Instead of `-Uhv` to place RPMs on your computer, use `-e` (for erase) to remove them.

```
# rpm -e nmap
```

And that's it. The `-e` option is silent, so there's no output. Notice, however, that when you install software using `rpm -Uhv`, you need to specify the filename, otherwise `rpm` has no way to know what you want to install. When you remove software with `rpm -e`, however, you specify the package name because the files used for installation are now long gone, and `rpm` knows software by the package name.

## Install Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions

```
yum install [package]
```

The `rpm` command is powerful, but after you use it for a while you'll quickly run into a problem when you try to install a package that has dependencies (otherwise known as "dependency hell"). In order to install package A, you also need to download and install packages B and C, but in order to install C you also need to download and install packages D and E, but in order to install E...aaaaaggh!

Debian-based distributions (that you'll read about later in this chapter) solved this problem years ago with the powerful and useful `apt`; RPM-based distributions can use `apt`, but more commonly they use the relatively new and still immature `yum`. Originally developed for the RPM-based Yellow Dog Linux distribution (hence the name, which stands for Yellow Dog Updater, Modified), `yum` is now widely used but still lags behind `apt` in features and usability. Still, that's what's available, so that's what we're going to cover.

The `yum` command installs, upgrades, and uninstalls software packages by acting as a wrapper around `rpm`. In addition, `yum` automatically handles dependencies for you. For example, if you're trying to install package A from the example in the introductory paragraph, `yum` downloads and installs A, B, and C for you. Later, if you decide that you no longer want A on your system, `yum` can uninstall it for you, along with B and C, as long as other software packages don't require them.

Installing software with `yum` is pretty easy. Let's say you want to install XMMS, a media player (not surprising, since the name stands for X Multimedia System). To install XMMS, you also need to install several other dependencies. With `yum`, this process becomes much less painful than it would be if you were attempting to install manually using `rpm`. To start with, you don't need to find and download the `xmms` package yourself; instead, `yum` downloads XMMS and any other necessary dependencies for you.

Unfortunately, `yum` is incredibly verbose as it goes about its work. The following output has been cut drastically, yet it's still lengthy. Nevertheless, this gives you a rough approximation of what you'd see if you were using `yum`.

```
# yum install xmms
Setting up Install Process
Setting up repositories
update 100% |=====| 951 B      00:00
base    100% |=====| 1.1 kB     00:00

Resolving Dependencies
--> Populating transaction set with selected packages. Please wait.
--> Downloading header for xmms to pack into transaction set.
xmms-1.2.10-9.i386.rpm 100% |=====| 24 kB 00:00
--> Restarting Dependency Resolution with new changes.

--> Downloading header for gtk+ to pack into transaction set.
gtk%2B-1.2.10-33.i386.rpm 100% |=====| 23 kB 00:00

Dependencies Resolved

Package      Arch Version      Repository      Size
-----
Installing:
  xmms        i386 1:1.2.10-9    base            1.9 M
Installing for dependencies:

  libogg      i386 2:1.1.2-1     base            16 k
  libvorbis   i386 1:1.1.0-1     base            185 k

Total download size: 3.3 M
Is this ok [y/N]:
```

After you enter `y`, `yum` downloads and installs the packages, continuing to inform you about what it's doing, every step of the way.

```
[View full width]Downloading Packages:
...
```

```
(5/6): libogg-1.1.2-1.i386 100% |=====| 16 kB 00:00
(6/6): libvorbis-1.1.0-1. 100% |=====| 185 kB 00:00
Running Transaction Test
```

Running Transaction

```
Installing: libogg          ##### [1/6]
Installing: libvorbis       ##### [2/6]
```

...

```
Installed: xmms.i386 1:1.2.10-9
Dependency Installed: gdk-pixbuf.i386 1:0.22.0-17.el4.3 gtk+.i386 1:1.2.10-33 libogg.i386
2:1.1.2-1 libvorbis.i386 1:1.1.0-1 mikmod.i386 0:3.1.6-32.EL4
```

Whew! XMMS is finally installed and available for use. Now find out how to get rid of XMMS if you decide you don't like it.

## Remove Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions

### **yum remove [package]**

One thing in yum's favor: Its command syntax is very user friendly. Want to install a package? `yum install`. Want to remove? `yum remove`. So if you're tired of XMMS, just run this command:

```
# yum remove xmms
Setting up Remove Process
Resolving Dependencies
```

```
---> Package xmms.i386 1:1.2.10-9 set to be erased
```

Dependencies Resolved

Package	Arch	Version	Repository	Size
---------	------	---------	------------	------

Removing:

xmms	i386	1:1.2.10-9	installed	5.2 M
------	------	------------	-----------	-------

Is this ok [y/N]:

Even for something as simple as removing a software package, yum continues its habit of grabbing you by the lapels and telling you at length about its day. Press `y` to approve the uninstall, and you get a bit more data thrown at you:

```
Running Transaction Test
```

```
Running Transaction
  Removing      : xmms                ##### [1/1]
Removed: xmms.i386 1:1.2.10-9
Complete!
```

And now XMMS is gone. Notice that the dependencies that were installed by `yum` (detailed in the previous section, "[Install Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions](#)") are not removed along with the `xmms` package. XMMS needed those dependencies to run, but they can still work on your computer with different programs, so `yum` allows them to remain (this is the default behavior of `apt` as well, as you'll see soon in "[Remove Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian](#)").

## Upgrade Software Packages and Dependencies for RPM-Based Distributions

### `yum update`

Your Linux system contains hundreds, if not thousands, of software packages, and upgrades come out constantly for one package or another. It would be a full-time job for you to manually keep track of every new version of your software and install updates, but `yum` makes the process easy. A simple `yum update` command tells `yum` to check for any upgrades to the software it's tracking. If new packages are available, `yum` shows you what's available and asks your permission to proceed with an install.

```
# yum update
Setting up Update Process
Setting up repositories
update 100% |=====| 951 B      00:00
base   100% |=====| 1.1 kB     00:00
```

```
Resolving Dependencies
--> Populating transaction set with selected packages. Please wait.
--> Downloading header for cups-libs to pack into transaction set.
cups-libs-1.1.22-0.rc1.9. 100% |=====| 22 kB 00:00
--> Package cups-libs.i386 1:1.1.22-0.rc1.9.10 set to be updated
```

```
--> Running transaction check
Dependencies Resolved
Package Arch Version           Repository Size
```

```
Installing:
openssl i686 0.9.7a-43.4      update      1.1 M
pam      i386 0.77-66.13         update      1.8 M
perl     i386 3:5.8.5-24.RHEL4            update      11 M
udev     i386 039-10.10.EL4.3            update      830 k
wget     i386 1.10.2-0.40E               update      567 k
Transaction Summary
```

```
Install      1 Package(s)
Update       11 Package(s)
Remove       0 Package(s)
Total download size: 30 M
```

```
Is this ok [y/N]:
```

If you press `y` at this point, you're giving `yum` approval to download and install 12 packages. After lots of output, `yum` completes its job, and your computer is now up to date. Want to live on the bleeding edge? Run `yum update` daily. If you're not desirous of always using the latest and greatest, run `yum update` at a longer interval, but be sure to run it regularly. Security updates for software come out all the time, and it's a good idea to keep up-to-date.

## Find Packages Available for Download for RPM-Based Distributions

```
yum search [string]
yum list available
```

So you know how to install and remove software using `yum`, but how do you find software in the first place? Let's say you're interested in the GIMP, the GNU Image Manipulation Program. You want to know if any packages related to the GIMP are available to install using `yum`. You could try using `yum search gimp`, but it wouldn't be a good idea. That command looks for matches to your search term in all package names, descriptions, summaries, and even the list of packagers' names. You'll end up with a list about as long as Bill Gates's bank statement.

A better choice is to query the list of packages available through `yum` (which would normally produce another crazily long list), but then pipe the results through a `grep` search for your term.

```
$ yum list available | grep gimp
gimp.i386                1:2.0.5-5      base
gimp-devel.i386          1:2.0.5-5      base
gimp-help.noarch         2-0.1.0.3      base
gimp-print.i386          4.2.7-2        base
```

Eleven results show up now that's workable. If you really want to perform the complete search, use `yum search`; otherwise, use `yum list available` and `grep`. Most of the time, the latter choice is what you'll really want, and it'll be far easier to work with to boot.

## Install Software Packages for Debian

```
dpkg -i [package]
```

Installing new software is one of the most fun things you can do with a Linux machine. As you'll learn in upcoming sections, Debian has `apt`, the most powerful and easiest-to-use system for installing software of any Linux distribution. As powerful as `apt` is, much of it is a wrapper around the `dpkg` program (in the same way `yum` is a wrapper around `rpm`), which does the grunt work of installing and removing software on a Debian-based machine. Before learning how to use `apt`, you should learn how to use `dpkg` because `apt` can't be used to install everything.

Here's a case in point: One of the most popular Voice over IP (VoIP) programs out now is Skype. Due to licensing issues, however, Skype isn't included in the default installs of most distributions. If you want Skype, you have to first download it from the company's site, and then manually install it. To get Skype, head over to the Linux download page, at [www.skype.com/products/skype/linux](http://www.skype.com/products/skype/linux), and find the package for your distribution. In this case, you're going to use the Debian package, which at this time is named `skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb`.

After the `.deb` file is downloaded onto your system, it's time to install it. First use `cd` to change directories to the directory that contains the `.deb` file, and then use `dpkg` to install it.

#### Note

On most Debian-based distributions, this and all other `dpkg` commands are run as root. The wildly popular K/Ubuntu distribution, however, doesn't use root. Instead, commands normally run as root are prefaced with `sudo`. In other words, Debian would use this:

```
# dpkg -i skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb
```

K/Ubuntu and other `sudo`-based distributions would instead use this:

```
$ sudo dpkg -i skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb
```

This book was written using several machines running K/Ubuntu, so if you see `sudo` instead of `root`, now you know why.

```
# ls
skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb
# dpkg -i skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb
sudo dpkg -i skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb
Selecting previously deselected package skype.
(Reading database ... 97963 files and directories currently installed.)
Unpacking skype (from skype_1.2.0.18-1_i386.deb) ...
Setting up skype (1.2.0.18-1) ...
```

That's it. The `dpkg` command is a model of brevity, telling you the important information and nothing more.

## Remove Software Packages for Debian

**`dpkg -r [package]`**

The `-i` option, used to install software on Debian-based machines, stands for install; in a similar bit of happy obviousness, the `-r` option, used to uninstall software on Debian-based machines, stands for remove. If you get tired of Skype, it's a simple matter to get it off your computer.

```
# dpkg -r skype
(Reading database ... 98004 files and directories currently installed.)
Removing skype ...
```

When you install software using `dpkg -i`, you need to specify the filename, otherwise `dpkg` has no way to know what you want to install. When you remove software with `dpkg -r`, however, you specify the package name because the files used for installation are now long gone, and `apt` knows software by the package name.

## Install Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian

### `apt-get install [package]`

The `dpkg` command is powerful, but after you use it for a while you'll quickly run into a problem when you try to install a package that has dependencies (otherwise known as "dependency hell"). In order to install package A, you also need to download and install packages B and C, but in order to install C you also need to download and install packages D and E, but in order to install E...aaaaaggh! You need `apt`!

The `apt` command and its accessories install, upgrade, and uninstall software packages. Best of all, `apt` automatically handles dependencies for you. For example, if you're trying to install package A from the example in the previous paragraph, `apt` downloads and installs A, B, and C for you. Later, if you decide that you no longer want A on your system, `apt` can uninstall it for you, along with B and C, as long as other software packages don't require them.

The `apt` command was originally developed for use on the Debian distribution as a front end to `dpkg`. It's now found on every Debian-based distribution which includes Debian itself, K/Ubuntu, Linspire, Xandros, and a whole host of others and it's one of the features that make Debian so easy to use and powerful. Other, non-Debian distributions realized how great `apt` was, and eventually Connectiva ported `apt` to work with RPMs. (This chapter focuses on `apt` as it is used with Debian.)

### Tip

For a good overview of `apt` as it is used with RPM-based distros, see my "A Very Apropos `apt`" in the October 2003 issue of Linux Magazine, available at [www.linux-mag.com/2003-10/apt\\_01.html](http://www.linux-mag.com/2003-10/apt_01.html). In addition to that article, however, you should also check out <http://apt.freshrpms.net> for the latest in RPM repositories. Note that free registration is required to access Linux Magazine's content.

Let's say you want to install the awesome tool `sshfs` using `apt`. To do it, you go through the following process (and remember that these commands must be run as root):

```
# apt-get update
Get:1 http://us.archive.ubuntu.com breezy Release.gpg [189B]
Get:2 http://archive.ubuntu.com breezy Release.gpg [189B]
```

```
Hit ftp://ftp.free.fr breezy/free Sources
```



```

Hit ftp://ftp.free.fr breezy/non-free Sources
Fetched 140kB in 1m4s (2176B/s)
Reading package lists... Done
[Results truncated for length]
# apt-get install sshfs
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree... Done
The following extra packages will be installed:
  fuse-utils libfuse2
The following NEW packages will be installed:
  fuse-utils libfuse2 sshfs

Need to get 96.9kB of archives.
After unpacking 344kB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue [Y/n]? y
Get:1 http://us.archive.ubuntu.com breezy/universe  sshfs 1.1-1 [19.3kB]
...
Fetched 96.9kB in 10s (9615B/s)
Reading package fields... Done
Reading package status... Done
Preconfiguring packages ...
...
Selecting previously deselected package sshfs.
Unpacking sshfs (from .../archives/sshfs_1.1-1_i386.deb) ...

Setting up sshfs (1.1-1) ...

```

Let's go over what you just did because you actually ran two commands. `apt-get update` downloads a list of current software packages from apt servers known as repositories that are listed in your apt configuration file, found at `/etc/apt/sources.list` (if you want to see where your repositories are, run `cat /etc/apt/sources.list`). If you saw `Get` at the beginning of a line after running `apt-get update`, it means that apt saw that the list on the repository is newer, so it's downloading that particular list; `Ign`, on the other hand, means that the list on the repository and on your computer are in sync, so nothing is downloaded. By running `apt-get update` before you do anything else, you ensure that your list of packages is correct and up-to-date.

The command `apt-get install sshfs` retrieves the specified package, as well as any necessary dependencies (in this case, `fuse-utils` and `libfuse2`). After they're on your computer, apt (really `dpkg` acting at the behest of apt) installs all of the software for you. Keep in mind that you always use the package name, not the filename. In other words, use `apt-get install sshfs`, not `apt-get install sshfs_1.1-1_i386.deb`. As you saw, if apt does discover additional dependencies for the requested package, as it did for `sshfs`, you'll have to confirm that you want them installed before apt grabs them.

If you want to install more than one package at the same time, just list them all on the command line. For example, if you wanted to install `sshfs` and `shfs-utils`, you'd do the following:

```
# apt-get install sshfs shfs-utils
```

Any dependencies for either `sshfs` or `shfs-utils` are discovered, and you are asked if you want to install them as well. Yes, it's that simple.

Tip

Don't know what `sshfs` is? Oh, but you should! Read my blog posting "Mount Remote Drives via SSH with SSHFS," which you can find on The Open Source Weblog at <http://opensource.weblogsinc.com/2005/11/03/mount-remote-drives-via-ssh-with-sshfs/>.

## Remove Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian

```
apt-get remove [package]
```

If you no longer want a package on your system, `apt` makes it easy to uninstall it: Instead of `apt-get install`, you use `apt-get remove`. This command works exactly contrary to `apt-get install`: It uninstalls the packages you specify, along with any dependencies. Once again, reference the package name, not the filename, so run `apt-get remove sshfs`, not `apt-get remove sshfs_1.1-1_i386.deb`.

```
# apt-get remove sshfs
Password:
```

```
The following packages will be REMOVED:
 sshfs
```

```
After unpacking 98.3kB disk space will be freed.
Do you want to continue [Y/n]?
```

Removing a package actually doesn't remove every vestige of a package, however, because configuration files for the removed package stick around on your computer. If you're sure that you want to remove everything, use the `--purge` option.

```
# apt-get --purge remove sshfs
Password:
```

```
The following packages will be REMOVED:
 sshfs*
After unpacking 98.3kB disk space will be freed.
Do you want to continue [Y/n]?
```

Using `--purge`, the packages that `apt` is about to remove are marked with asterisks, indicating that associated configuration files are going to be removed as well.

## Upgrade Software Packages and Dependencies for Debian

**apt-get upgrade**

A modern Linux system has several thousand software packages on it, and it's a sure bet that at least one of those is upgraded by its maintainer every day. With apt, it's quite simple to keep your system up-to-date. The process looks like this (and remember, this command must be run as root):

```
[View full width]# apt-get update
Get:1 http://us.archive.ubuntu.com breezy Release.gpg [189B]
Get:2 http://archive.ubuntu.com breezy Release.gpg [189B]

Hit ftp://ftp.free.fr breezy/free Sources
Hit ftp://ftp.free.fr breezy/non-free Sources
Fetched 140kB in 1m4s (2176B/s)
Reading package lists... Done
[Results truncated for length]
# apt-get upgrade
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree... Done
The following packages have been kept back:
    koffice
The following packages will be upgraded:
    kalzium kamera kanagram karbon kbruch kchart kcoloredit kdegraphics
    kdegraphics-kfile-plugins
...
53 upgraded, 0 newly installed, 0 to remove and 1 not upgraded.
Need to get 58.3MB of archives.
After unpacking 28.7kB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue [Y/n]?
```

Let's figure out what was going on here. Once again, you want to run `apt-get update` first so your computer is in sync with your apt repositories. Then `apt-get upgrade` looks for any differences between what you have installed and what's available on the repositories. If differences exist, apt shows you a list of all of the packages that it would like to download and install on your computer. Of course, the actual list of packages varies depending on how up-to-date your system is. In this case, enough time had passed that there were 53 packages to upgrade.

If you type `y`, apt downloads the 53 software packages to `/var/cache/apt/archives` and then installs them after they're all on your machine. If you don't want to go through with the upgrade, just type `n` instead.

That's easy enough, but the most efficient way to use apt to update your Linux box is to just join the commands together:

```
# apt-get update && apt-get upgrade
```

The `&&` makes sure that `apt-get upgrade` doesn't run unless `apt-get update` finishes without errors. Better yet, make an alias for that command in your `.bash_aliases` file, as was discussed in the "[Create a New Permanent Alias](#)" section of [Chapter 11](#), "[Your Shell](#)."

```
alias upgrade='apt-get update && apt-get upgrade '
```

Reload your `.bash_aliases` file, and now you just need to type in `upgrade`, press Enter, press `Y` to accept any new packages, and you're done. Windows Update, eat your heart out!

## Find Packages Available for Download for Debian

### `apt-cache search`

We've been talking a lot about installing software using `apt`, but how do you know what software packages are available in the first place? There's another tool in the `apt` toolbox that helps you do that: `apt-cache search`, which searches the lists of packages available in your `apt` repositories. In a nice change of pace, you don't need to be root at all to use `apt-cache search`.

```
$ apt-cache search dvdcss
libdvdread3 - Simple foundation for reading DVDs
ogle - DVD player with support for DVD menus
libdvdcss2 - portable library for DVD decryption
libdvdcss2-dev - development files for libdvdcss2
```

Keep in mind several things about how this command searches. It looks for matches to your string in this case, `dvdcss` and not for exact words. Also, your search pattern might appear in the package name or description. Finally, `apt-cache search` looks through the entire package list of both installed and uninstalled packages, so you might already have installed a package that shows up.

### Tip

Synaptic is a GUI for `apt` that allows you to do virtually everything discussed here, but via point-and-click instead of typing. In particular, its search tools are very nice, so much so that I usually use Synaptic solely for searching, and do everything else via the command line. That seems to maximize the effectiveness of each tool best.

## Clean Up Unneeded Installation Packages for Debian

### `apt-get clean`

When packages are downloaded and installed using `apt`, the `.deb` files are left behind in `/var/cache/apt/archives/`. Over time, you can take up a lot of disk space with those unnecessary installers. To remove all of the unneeded `.deb` files, use `apt-get clean` (once again, this command is run as root):

```
$ ls -l /var/cache/apt/archives/
fuse-utils_2.3.0-1ubuntu1.1_i386.deb
libfuse2_2.3.0-1ubuntu1.1_i386.deb
lock
partial/
sshfs_1.1-1_i386.deb
# apt-get clean
```

```
$ ls -l /var/cache/apt/archives/  
lock  
partial/
```

If a download is interrupted for whatever reason, you might find a partial `.deb` file in `/var/cache/apt/archives/partial/`. If you know that all of the updates and upgrades are complete and installed, it's safe to delete the contents of that directory, should you find anything in it.

## Troubleshoot Problems with apt

Of course, as great as `apt` is, you might run into problems. Here are some problems and their workarounds.

One simple problem that will result in a smack to your own forehead is the "Could not open lock file" error. You'll try to run `apt-get`, but instead of working, you get this error message:

```
E: Could not open lock file /var/lib/dpkg/lock - open (13 Permission denied)  
E: Unable to lock the administration directory (/var/lib/dpkg/), are you root?
```

The solution to this issue is right there in the second line: You're not logged in as root! Simply log in as root and try again, and everything should work.

### Note

If you're running K/Ubuntu, or any other distribution that uses `sudo` instead of `root`, the error means that you didn't preface the command with `sudo`. In other words, you ran this:

```
$ apt-get upgrade
```

You're seeing the error message because you should have run this instead:

```
$ sudo apt-get upgrade
```

The next common issue occurs when `apt` complains about broken dependencies. You'll know this one's happening when `apt` encourages you to run `apt-get -f install`. This suggestion is the program's way of telling you that your system has some broken dependencies that prevent `apt` from finishing its job.

There are a couple of possible solutions. You can follow `apt`'s advice, and run `apt-get -f install`, which tries to fix the problem by downloading and installing the necessary packages. Normally, this solves the problem, and you can move on.

If you don't want to do that, you can instead try running `apt-get -f remove`, which tries to fix the problem by removing packages that `apt` deems troublesome. These might sound like potentially dangerous

steps to take and they could be if you don't pay attention but each option gives you the chance to review any proposed changes and give your assent. Just be sure to examine `apt`'s proposals before saying yes.

Finally, `apt` might warn you that some packages "have been kept back." This warning tells you that `apt` has found a conflict between the requested package or one of its dependencies and another package already installed on your system. To resolve the issue, try to install the package that was kept back with the `-u` option, which gives you information about exactly what needs to be upgraded.

## Conclusion

RPM-based and Debian-based distributions, despite their differences, share some similarities when it comes to package management, in that both are designed to simplify the installation, removal, and management of software. RPM-based distributions use the `rpm` command to install, upgrade, and remove software, while Debian-based distributions use `dpkg` for the same purposes. To solve the headaches of dependency hell, RPM-based distributions have `yum`, a wrapper around `rpm`, while Debian-based distributions have `apt`, a wrapper around `dpkg`. Still, there are differences, principally in maturity and ease of use. In those areas, `apt` is definitely superior to `yum`, but `yum` is improving constantly.

In the end, both are still better than what Windows users have to put up with. Windows Update only updates Microsoft's own software and a few third-party hardware drivers, while both `apt` and `yum` handle virtually every piece of software on a Linux system. That's a huge advantage that Linux users have over their Microsoft cousins, and it's one that should make us proud.

# Part V: Networking

[Chapter 14. Connectivity](#)

[Chapter 15. Working on the Network](#)

[Chapter 16. Windows Networking](#)

## Chapter 14. Connectivity

Networking has been part of Linux since the OS's beginning as a humble kernel hacked on by a small group of programmers, and it's completely central to what makes Linux great. Linux networking most of the time just works, providing you with a rock-solid connection that can be endlessly tweaked and tuned to meet your exact needs.

This chapter is all about testing, measuring, and managing your networking devices and connections. When things are working correctly and they will for the vast majority of the time you can use the tools in this chapter to monitor your system's network connections; should you experience problems, this chapter will help you resolve some of the most irksome.

### Tip

The information in this chapter assumes that you're using IPv4 addressing, in the format of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. IPv6 will eventually replace IPv4, but that's still quite a while in the future. At that time, `route` and many of the other commands you'll be examining will change. For now, though, the information in this chapter is what you need. For more on IPv6, see Wikipedia's "IPv6" (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ipv6>).

## View the Status of Your Network Interfaces

### `ifconfig`

Everything in this chapter depends on your network connection. At the end of this chapter, in "[Troubleshooting Network Problems](#)," you're going to learn ways to fix problems with your network connection. Here at the beginning, let's find out what network connections you have in place and their status.

To get a quick look at all of your network devices, whether they're running or not, use `ifconfig` (which stands for interface configuration) with the `-a` (for all) option. Here's what you might see on a laptop (note that some distributions require you to log on as root to use `ifconfig`):

```
$ ifconfig -a
ath0 Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:14:6C:06:6B:FD
  inet addr:192.168.0.101  Bcast:192.168.0.255  Mask:255.255.255.0
  inet6 addr: fe80::214:6cff:fe06:6bfd/64 Scope:Link
  UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500 Metric:1
```

```

RX packets:1257 errors:7557 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:7557
TX packets:549 errors:2 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:200
RX bytes:195869 (191.2 KiB) TX bytes:95727 (93.4 KiB)
Interrupt:11 Memory:f8da0000-f8db0000

```

```

eth0 Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:02:8A:36:48:8A
BROADCAST MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
RX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
TX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
RX bytes:0 (0.0 b) TX bytes:0 (0.0 b)

```

```

lo Link encap:Local Loopback
inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
UP LOOPBACK RUNNING MTU:16436 Metric:1
RX packets:11092 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
TX packets:11092 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
RX bytes:982629 (959.5 KiB) TX bytes:982629 (959.5 KiB)

```

Three interfaces are listed here: `ath0` (a wireless card), `eth0` (an Ethernet card), and `lo` (the loopback interface more on that in a moment). For each of those, you're told the type of connection, the Media Access Control (MAC) or hardware address, the IP address, the broadcast and subnet mask addresses, and information about received and transmitted packets, among other data. If a connection is disconnected, much of that information is missing. In fact, that's one way you can see that `ath0` and `lo` are up, and `eth0` is down: `eth0` is missing an IP address, among other important details. Of course, an easier way to tell is that the fourth line of the `ath0` and `lo` interfaces begins with `UP`, while `eth0` does not.

Let's take the three interfaces in reverse order. `lo` is the loopback address, which enables a machine to refer to itself. The loopback address is always represented by the IP address of 127.0.0.1. Basically, your system needs it to work correctly. If you have it, don't worry about it; if you don't have it, you'll know it because you will find yourself in a world of hurt.

### Tip

For more on the loopback interface and address, see Wikipedia's "Loopback" at <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Loopback>.

`eth0` is an Ethernet card, into which you actually plug cables. No cables are plugged into the Ethernet card's port currently, so it's not activated, hence the lack of any addresses: IP, broadcast, and subnet mask. It's possible to have both a wired and wireless interface running at the same time, although it's usually not necessary.

Finally there is `ath0`, a wireless PCMCIA card. You might also see a wireless card with a name like `eth0` if it's the primary network interface, or `eth1` if it's secondary. When the wireless card was inserted, K/Ubuntu automatically recognized it and configured the system to work with it, giving it the `ath0` identifier. Because wireless interfaces are just Ethernet interfaces with some extra wireless goodies, the information you get with `ifconfig` is similar to what you'd see for `eth0` if it was up.



## Note

You may see other names for your network devices, such as `wlan0` for wireless cards.

`ifconfig -a` shows all interfaces, even those that are down; `ifconfig` by itself shows just those connections that are up. It's a quick way to check the status of your network interfaces, especially if you need to find your IP address quickly.

## Note

You can also configure your network interfaces using `ifconfig`, a process described later in "[Configure a Network Interface](#)."

## Verify That a Computer Is Running and Accepting Requests

**ping****ping -c**

The `ping` command sends a special kind of packetan ICMP ECHO\_REQUEST message to the specified address. If a machine at that address is listening for ICMP messages, it responds with an ICMP ECHO\_REPLY packet. (It's true that firewalls can block ICMP messages, rendering `ping` useless, but most of the time it's not a problem.) A successful `ping` means that network connectivity is occurring between the two machines.

```
$ ping www.google.com
ping www.google.com
PING www.l.google.com (72.14.203.99) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 72.14.203.99: icmp_seq=1 ttl=245 time=17.1 ms
64 bytes from 72.14.203.99: icmp_seq=2 ttl=245 time=18.1 ms

[Results truncated for length]--- www.l.google.com
ping statistics ---
6 packets transmitted, 5 received, 16% packet loss, time 5051ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 16.939/17.560/18.136/0.460 ms
```

The `ping` command won't stop until you press Ctrl+C. This can cause problems if you forget that you're using `ping` because it will continue forever until it is stopped or your machine's network connection stops. I once forgot and left a `ping` session running for 18 days, sending nearly 1.4 million pings to one of my servers. Oops!

If you want to give `ping` a limit, you can set the number of packets that `ping` is to send with the `-c` option, followed by a number. After `ping` sends out that number of packets, it stops, reporting its results.

```
$ ping -c 3 www.granneman.com
PING granneman.com (216.23.180.5) 56(84) bytes of data.
```

```
64 bytes from 216.23.180.5: icmp_seq=1 ttl=44 time=65.4 ms
64 bytes from 216.23.180.5: icmp_seq=2 ttl=44 time=64.5 ms
64 bytes from 216.23.180.5: icmp_seq=3 ttl=44 time=65.7 ms
--- granneman.com ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss,
time 4006ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 64.515/65.248/65.700/0.510 ms
```

The `ping` command is a standard and speedy way to determine basic network connectivity; even better, if you include the `-c` option, you'll never forget and leave `ping` running accidentally for 18 days.

For more about using `ping` to diagnose network connectivity issues, see "[Troubleshooting Network Problems](#)."

## Trace the Route Packets Take Between Two Hosts

### `traceroute`

The `traceroute` command shows every step taken on the route from your machine to a specified host. Let's say you want to know why you can't get to [www.granneman.com](http://www.granneman.com). You were able to load it just fine yesterday, but today's attempts to load the web page are timing out. Where's the problem?

```
$ traceroute www.granneman.com
traceroute to granneman.com (216.23.180.5), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets
 1  192.168.0.1 (192.168.0.1)  1.245 ms  0.827 ms  0.839 ms
 2  10.29.64.1 (10.29.64.1)  8.582 ms  19.930 ms  7.083 ms
 3  24.217.2.165 (24.217.2.165)  10.152 ms  25.476 ms  36.617 ms
 4  12.124.129.97 (12.124.129.97)  9.203 ms  8.003 ms  11.307 ms
 5  12.122.82.241 (12.122.82.241)  52.901 ms  53.619 ms  51.215 ms
 6  tbr2-p013501.sl9mo.ip.att.net (12.122.11.121)  51.625 ms  52.166 ms  50.156 ms
 7  tbr2-cl21.la2ca.ip.att.net (12.122.10.14)  50.669 ms  54.049 ms  69.334 ms
 8  gar1-p3100.lsnca.ip.att.net (12.123.199.229)  50.167 ms  48.703 ms  49.636 ms
 9  * * *
10  border20.po2-bbnet2.lax.pnap.net (216.52.255.101)  59.414 ms  62.148 ms  51.337 ms
11  intelenet-3.border20.lax.pnap.net (216.52.253.234)  51.930 ms  53.054 ms  50.748 ms
12  v8.core2.irv.intelenet.net (216.23.160.66)  50.611 ms  51.947 ms  60.694 ms
13  * * *
14  * * *
15  * * *
```

What do those `* * *` mean? Each one indicates a five-second timeout at that hop. Sometimes that could indicate that the machine simply doesn't understand how to cope with that `traceroute` packet due to a bug, but a consistent set of `*` indicates that there's a problem somewhere with the router to which `v8.core2.irv.intelenet.net` hands off packets. If the problem persists, you need to notify the administrator of `v8.core2.irv.intelenet.net` and let him know there's a problem. (Of course, it might not hurt to let the administrator of `gar1-p3100.lsnca.ip.att.net` know that his router is having a problem getting to `border20.po2-bbnet2.lax.pnap.net` as well, but it's not nearly the problem that `intelenet.net` is having.)

One other way to get around a problematic `traceroute` is to increase the number of hops that the command will try. By default, the maximum number of hops is 30, although you can change that with the `-m` option, as in `traceroute -m 40 www.bbc.co.uk`.

### Tip

Actually, a better `traceroute` is `mtr`, which stands for Matt's traceroute. Think of it as a combination of `ping` and `traceroute`. If `mtr` is available for your Linux distribution, download and try it out. For more information, head over to [www.bitwizzard.nl/mtr](http://www.bitwizzard.nl/mtr).

## Perform DNS Lookups

### host

The Domain Name System (DNS) was created to make it easier for humans to access resources on the Internet. Computers work beautifully with numbers after all, everything a computer does is really a number but humans can remember and process words much more efficiently. A website might be located at 72.14.203.99, but it would be hard for most people to remember that. Instead, it's much easier to keep in memory that you want to go to [www.google.com](http://www.google.com). DNS is basically a giant database that keeps track of the relationship between 72.14.203.99 and [www.google.com](http://www.google.com), and millions of other IP addresses and domain names as well.

### Tip

DNS is a large, complicated, and fascinating topic. For more details, see Wikipedia's "Domain Name System" (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dns>) to start, and then jump into Paul Albitz and Cricket Liu's seminal DNS and BIND.

To quickly find the IP address associated with a domain name, use the `host` command:

```
$ host www.granneman.com
www.granneman.com is an alias for granneman.com.
granneman.com has address 216.23.180.5
www.granneman.com is an alias for granneman.com.
www.granneman.com is an alias for granneman.com.
granneman.com mail is handled by 30 bhoth.pair.com.
```

There are five responses because `host` performs several types of DNS lookups. It's easy, however, to see what you wanted: [www.granneman.com](http://www.granneman.com) can be found at 216.23.180.5.

You can also reverse the process, and find out a domain name associated with an IP.

```
$ host 65.214.39.152
152.39.214.65.in-addr.arpa domain name pointer web.bloglines.com.
```

### Note

Many other commands will reveal a host's IP address, but `host` is the most efficient way to perform this task. Not to mention, you can do reverse lookups with `host`, which is not always possible with other commands.

Find out more about how `host` can help you at the end of this chapter in "[Troubleshooting Network Problems](#)."

## Configure a Network Interface

### `ifconfig`

In the first section of this chapter, "[View the Status of Your Network Interfaces](#)," you saw how you could use `ifconfig` to get details about the status of your network interfaces. The `ifconfig` command is more powerful than that, however, as you can also use it to configure your network interfaces.

#### Note

You can make quite a few changes with `ifconfig`, but you're only going to look at a few (for more details, see `man ifconfig`).

To change the IP address for the Ethernet card found at `eth0` to 192.168.0.125, run this command (virtually all commands associated with `ifconfig` need to be run as root):

```
# ifconfig eth0 192.168.0.125
```

In order to run certain types of network-sniffing tools, such as the awesome Ethereal, you first need to set your network card to promiscuous mode. By default, `eth0` only listens for packets sent specifically to it, but in order to sniff all the packets flowing by on a network, you need to tell your card to listen to everything, which is promiscuous mode.

```
# ifconfig eth0 promisc
```

After you've done that, running `ifconfig` shows you that your card is now looking at every packet it can. See the `PROMISC` in the fourth line?

```
# ifconfig eth0
eth0 Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:02:8A:36:48:8A
    inet addr:192.168.0.143 Bcast:192.168.0.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
    inet6 addr: fe80::202:8aff:fe36:488a/64 Scope:Link
    UP BROADCAST PROMISC MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
[Results truncated for length]
```

When you're done using `Ethereal`, don't forget to turn off promiscuous mode.

```
# ifconfig eth0 -promisc
# ifconfig eth0
eth0 Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:02:8A:36:48:8A
inet addr:192.168.0.143 Bcast:192.168.0.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
inet6 addr: fe80::202:8aff:fe36:488a/64 Scope:Link
UP BROADCAST MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
```

You can even change (or "spoof") the hardware MAC address for your network device. This is usually only necessary to get around some ISPs' attempts to link Internet service to a specific machine. Be careful with spoofing your MAC address because a mistake can conflict with other network devices, causing problems. If you do decide to spoof your MAC, make sure you use `ifconfig` by itself to first acquire the default MAC address so you can roll back to that later (by the way, the MAC address shown in this command is completely bogus, so don't try to use it).

```
# ifconfig eth0 hw ether 00:14:CC:00:1A:00
```

The `ifconfig` command is a cornerstone of working with network interfaces. Make sure you understand how it works so you can take maximum advantage of all it has to offer.

## View the Status of Your Wireless Network Interfaces

### `iwconfig`

The `ifconfig` command shows the status of your network interfaces, even wireless ones. However, it can't show all the data associated with a wireless interface because `ifconfig` simply doesn't know about it. To get the maximum data associated with a wireless card, you want to use `iwconfig` instead of `ifconfig`.

```
$ iwconfig
lo    no wireless extensions.
eth0  no wireless extensions.
ath0  IEEE 802.11g  ESSID:"einstein"
Mode:Managed  Frequency:2.437 GHz  Access Point: 00:12:17:31:4F:C6
Bit Rate:48 Mb/s   Tx-Power:18 dBm  Sensitivity=0/3
Retry:off   RTS thr:off   Fragment thr:off
Power Management:off
Link Quality=41/94  Signal level=-54 dBm  Noise level=-95 dBm
Rx invalid nwid:1047  Rx invalid crypt:0  Rx invalid frag:0
Tx excessive retries:73  Invalid misc:73   Missed beacon:21
```

You can see the data unique to wireless interfaces that `iwconfig` provides, including the type of card (802.11g in this case), the ESSID or network name (this network's ESSID is `einstein`), the mode or kind of network to which you're connected, the MAC address of the wireless access point (here `00:12:17:31:4F:C6`), and various details about the quality of the wireless connection.

The combination of `ifconfig` and `iwconfig` tells you everything you need to know about your wireless

network interface. And, just as you can also use `ifconfig` to configure your wired cards, you can also use `iwconfig` to configure your wireless cards, as you'll see in the next section.

## Configure a Wireless Network Interface

### `iwconfig`

In the previous section, "[View the Status of Your Wireless Network Interfaces](#)," you used `iwconfig` to see important details about your wireless card and its connection. You can also use `iwconfig`, however, to configure that wireless card and its connections. If this sounds like `ifconfig`, it should, as `iwconfig` was based on `ifconfig` and its behaviors.

#### Note

You can make several changes with `iwconfig`, but you're only going to look at a few (for more details, see `man iwconfig`).

The network topologies associated with wired networks, such as star, bus, and ring, to name a few, have been known and understood for quite some time. Wireless networks introduce some new topologies to the mix, including the following:

- Managed (an access point creates a network to which wireless devices can connect; the most common topology for wireless networking)
- Ad-Hoc (two or more wireless devices form a network to work with each other)
- Master (the wireless device acts as an access point)
- Repeater (the wireless device forwards packets to other wireless devices)

There are others, but those are the main ones. Using `iwconfig`, you can tell your wireless card that you want it to operate differently, in accordance with a new topology.

#### Tip

For more on stars, busses, rings, and the like, see Wikipedia's "Network Topology" at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Network\\_topology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Network_topology).

```
# iwconfig ath0 mode ad-hoc
```

After specifying the interface, simply use the mode option following the name of the mode you want to use.

#### Note

Remember that the card you're using in these examples has an interface name of `ath0`; yours might be `eth1`, `wlan0`, or something else entirely. To find out your interface's name, use `iwconfig` by itself, as discussed in the previous section.

The Extended Service Set Identifier (ESSID) is the name of the wireless network to which you're joined or you want to join. Most of the time an ESSID name of any will work just fine, assuming that you can meet the network's other needs, such as encryption, if that's necessary. Some networks, however, require that you specify the exact ESSID.

```
# iwconfig ath0 essid lincoln
```

Here you are joining a wireless network with an ESSID of `lincoln`. Simply use the `essid` option, followed by the name of the ESSID, and you're good.

More and more networks are using encryption to protect users' communications from sniffers that capture all the traffic and then look through it for useful information. The simplest form of network encryption for wireless networks is Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP). Although this provides a small measure of security, it's just that: small. WEP is easily cracked by a knowledgeable attacker, and it has now been superseded by the much more robust Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA). Unfortunately, getting WPA to work with wireless cards on Linux can be a real bear, and is beyond the scope of this book. Besides, WEP, despite its flaws, is still far more common, and it is better than nothing. Just don't expect complete and total security using it.

#### Tip

For more on WEP and WPA, see Wikipedia's "Wired Equivalent Privacy" (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WEP>) and "Wi-Fi Protected Access" ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wi-Fi\\_Protected\\_Access](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wi-Fi_Protected_Access)). You can find information about getting WPA to work with your Linux distribution at "Linux WPA/WPA2/IEEE 802.1X Supplicant" ([http://hostap.epitest.fi/wpa\\_supplicant](http://hostap.epitest.fi/wpa_supplicant)). If you're using Windows drivers via `ndiswrapper`, also be sure to check out "How to Use WPA with `ndiswrapper`" (<http://ndiswrapper.sourceforge.net/mediawiki/index.php/WPA>).

WEP works with a shared encryption key, a password that exists on both the wireless access point and your machine. The password can come in two forms: hex digits or plain text. It doesn't really matter which because `iwconfig` can handle both. If you've been given hex digits, simply follow the `enc` option with the key.

```
# iwconfig ath0 enc 646c64586278742a6229742f4c
```

If you've instead been given plain text to use, you still use the `enc` option, but you must preface the key with `s:` to indicate that what follows is a text string.

```
# iwconfig ath0 enc s:dldXbxt*b)t/L
```

#### Tip

I created those WEP keys using the very nice WEP Key Generator found at [www.andrewscompanies.com/tools/wep.asp](http://www.andrewscompanies.com/tools/wep.asp).

If you have several options to change at one time, you probably would like to perform all of them with one command. To do so, follow `iwconfig` with your device name, and then place any changes you want to make one after the other.

```
# iwconfig ath0 essid lincoln enc 646c64586278742a6229742f4c
```

The preceding listing changes the ESSID and sets WEP encryption using hex digits for the wireless device `ath0`. You can set as many things at one time as you'd like.

## Grab a New Address Using DHCP

### **dhclient**

Most home networks and many business networks use the Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) to parcel out IP addresses and other key information about the network to new machines joining it. Without DHCP, any new machine must have all of its networking information hard-coded in; with DHCP, a new machine simply plugs in to the network, asks the DHCP server to provide it with an IP address and other necessary items, and then automatically incorporates the DHCP server's reply into its networking configurations.

### Note

The following discussion assumes that you've already configured your network device to use DHCP instead of hard-coded settings. Various Linux distributions expect that information to be found in different configuration files. Debian-based distributions look for the line `iface [interface] inet dhcp` in `/etc/network/interfaces`. Red Hat-derived distributions instead want to see `BOOTPROTO=dhcp` in `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-[interface]`. In these examples, substitute `[interface]` with the name of your interface. For more information, search Google for "dhcp your-distro."

Sometimes your machine can't connect at boot to the DHCP server, so you need to manually initiate the DHCP request. Or you might have networking problems that require a new IP address. No matter the reason, the `dhclient` command attempts to query any available DHCP server for the necessary data (`dhclient` must be run as root).

```
# dhclient eth0
```

```
Listening on LPF/eth0/00:0b:cd:3b:20:e2
Sending on   LPF/eth0/00:0b:cd:3b:20:e2
Sending on   Socket/fallback
DHCPDISCOVER on eth0 to 255.255.255.255 port 67 interval 8
DHCPOFFER from 192.168.0.1
DHCPREQUEST on eth0 to 255.255.255.255 port 67
```



```
DHCPACK from 192.168.0.1
bound to 192.168.0.104 -- renewal in 37250 seconds.
# ifconfig eth0
eth0 Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0B:CD:3B:20:E2
inet addr:192.168.0.104 Bcast:192.168.0.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
inet6 addr: fe80::20b:cdf:fe3b:20e2/64 Scope:Link
```

To release, or give up, the IP address that the DHCP server has assigned you, use the `-r` (for release) option.

```
# dhclient -r eth0

sit0: unknown hardware address type 776
sit0: unknown hardware address type 776
Listening on LPF/eth0/00:0b:cd:3b:20:e2
Sending on LPF/eth0/00:0b:cd:3b:20:e2
Sending on Socket/fallback
```

Ideally, the `dhclient` command should run automatically when you boot your computer, plug in a wireless PCMCIA card, or connect an Ethernet cable to your wired jack, but sometimes it doesn't. When DHCP doesn't work like it's supposed to, turn to `dhclient`. It's especially nice how `dhclient` is automatically verbose, so you can see what's going on and diagnose as necessary.

#### Note

Some Linux distributions are still using an older program to perform DHCP, `pump` instead of `dhclient`. For info on `pump`, take a look at `man pump`, or read a brief HOWTO for Red Hat and Mandrake at [www.faqs.org/docs/Linux-mini/DHCTemp0279.html#REDHAT6](http://www.faqs.org/docs/Linux-mini/DHCTemp0279.html#REDHAT6).

## Make a Network Connection Active

### `ifup`

You actually use the `ifup` command all the time without realizing it. When you boot your computer to find that you're successfully connected to the Internet, you can thank `ifup`. If you plug in an Ethernet cable to the port on the back of your Linux box, and a few seconds later you're able to get email again, it's `ifup` that did the heavy lifting. In essence, `ifup` runs when it detects a network event, such as a reboot or a cable plugged in, and then executes the instructions found in your network interface configuration files (if you're curious, a note in the preceding section discussed the names and locations of those files).

Sometimes, though, you might experience networking problems and need to run `ifup` manually. It's incredibly easy to do so: Log on as root, and then follow `ifup` with the name of the network interface you want to activate.

```
# ifconfig
lo Link encap:Local Loopback
inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
...
```

```
# ifup eth0
# ifconfig
eth0 Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0B:CD:3B:20:E2
inet addr:192.168.0.14 Bcast:192.168.0.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
inet6 addr: fe80::20b:cdf:fe3b:20e2/64 Scope:Link
UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
...

lo Link encap:Local Loopback
inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
```

Notice that `ifup` doesn't tell you that it was successful. Indeed, like most Unix apps, `ifup` is silent upon success, and only noisy if it experiences failure or error. To see what `ifup` has accomplished, use `ifconfig`, as shown in the preceding listing.

#### Note

You can also use `ifconfig [interface] up` or `iwconfig [interface] up` to make wired or wireless connections active.

## Bring a Network Connection Down

### `ifdown`

The `ifup` command makes network connections active, and the `ifdown` command brings them down. Why would you need to bring down your network connection? Most often, it's because you're trying to bring it up, and `ifconfig` reports that it's already up, but erroneously configured. So you first bring it down, and then bring it back up.

```
# ifup eth0
ifup: interface eth0 already configured
# ifdown eth0
# ifup eth0
```

Notice that `ifdown`, like `ifup`, is silent upon success. If you don't see anything after entering `ifdown`, the command was successful, and that network interface is no longer going to work.

#### Note

You can also use `ifconfig eth0 down` or `iwconfig eth0 down` to bring wired or wireless connections down.

## Display Your IP Routing Table

### route

When you try to use Secure Shell (SSH) to connect to another computer on your LAN (something you'll learn about in [Chapter 15](#), "Working on the Network"), how does your computer know that it should confine the packets to your LAN and not send them to your router to be sent out on the Internet? And if you point your web browser to [www.ubuntu.com](http://www.ubuntu.com), how does your Linux box know to send that request to your router and not to another machine next to you?

The answer is that your Linux kernel has a routing table that keeps track of those things. To view your current routing table, simply enter `route` in your shell (no, you don't have to be root to view the routing table, but you do have to be root to change it, as you'll see in the next section).

```
$ route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway      Genmask         Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0   U        0      0      0 eth0
default      192.168.0.1 0.0.0.0         UG        0      0      0 eth0
```

### Note

There's only one network interface on this machine, so this is a pretty simple routing table. On a laptop that has both an Ethernet port and a wireless card, you'll see additional entries.

An IP address is composed of four octets, giving it the appearance of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, as in 192.168.0.124. When you send a packet out of your machine, the IP address that is the destination of that packet is compared to the Destination column in the routing table. The Genmask column works with the Destination column to indicate which of the four octets should be examined to determine the packet's destination.

For example, let's say you enter `ping 192.168.0.124` in your shell. A Genmask of 255.255.255.0 indicates that only the last octetthe number represented by 0 matters. In other words, when looking at 192.168.0.124, only the .124 is important to route packets to that address. Any packets intended for 192.168.0.1 through 192.168.0.255 (the limits of an IP address) match the Genmask and the Destination, so they stay on the Local Area Network and avoid the router. That's why there's an \* in the Gateway column next to 192.168.0.0: No Gateway is needed because that traffic is local.

On the other hand, everything else is by default intended for the router, which in this instance is at 192.168.0.1 in the Gateway column. The Genmask in this row is 0.0.0.0, indicating that any IP address not matching 192.168.0.1 through 192.168.0.255 should be sent through 192.168.0.1 (because 192.168.0.1 is the Gateway, it's a special case). 72.14.203.99, 82.211.81.166, and 216.23.180.5 all match with 0.0.0.0, so they must all go through the Gateway for the Net.

The other interesting thing about the routing table exposed by `route` is the Flags column, which gives information about the route. There are several possible flags, but the most common are U (the route is up) and G (use the gateway). In the preceding table, you can see that both routes are up, but only the second is the Gateway.

## Change Your IP Routing Table

### route

The `route` command can be used not only to view your routing table, but to alter it as well. You need to be careful here, however, as you can break the network and effectively landlock your computer.

Let's say your machine keeps dropping the Gateway, effectively making it impossible for any packets to leave your LAN for the Internet (this really happened to me once with a box). Run the `route` command, verify that the Gateway is missing, and then add it in with `route` (although viewing the route can be done as a normal user, changes to `route` requires root access).

```
# route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway Genmask      Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0 U        0      0      0 eth0
# route add -net default gw 192.168.0.1 dev eth0
# route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway      Genmask      Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0 U        0      0      0 eth0
default      192.168.0.1 0.0.0.0      UG        0      0      0 eth0
```

Let's break down that command. `add` indicates that you're adding a new route (to remove one, use `del`). The `-net` option tells the kernel that the target you're adding is a network, in this case the default destination. `gw` indicates that you want to route packets matching the destination (here the default, therefore utilizing a Genmask of 0.0.0.0) using a gateway at 129.168.0.1. Finally, `dev eth0` specifies the device to use, in this case the Ethernet card at `eth0`.

Let's say that in addition to your Ethernet card at `eth0`, you also have a wireless card at `ath0`. You want that wireless card to access resources on a LAN that uses 10.1.xxx.xxx as its base. You don't want the wireless card to be able to access the Internet at all. To add a route matching those criteria, you'd use these commands:

```
# route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway      Genmask      Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0 U        0      0      0 eth0
default      192.168.0.1 0.0.0.0      UG        0      0      0 eth0
# route add -net 10.1.0.0 netmask 255.255.0.0 dev ath0
# route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway      Genmask      Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0 U        0      0      0 eth0
10.1.0.0     *                255.255.0.0   U        0      0      0 ath0
default      192.168.0.1 0.0.0.0      UG        0      0      0 eth0
```

Here you indicated the wireless card with `dev ath0`, and then specified the `netmask` as 255.255.0.0 so routing would occur correctly. If you later want to remove that route, you'd use the following:

```
# route
Kernel IP routing table
```

```

Destination Gateway      Genmask      Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0 U        0      0      0 eth0
10.1.0.0      *                255.255.0.0  U        0      0      0 ath0
default       192.168.0.1 0.0.0.0      UG        0      0      0 eth0
# route del -net 10.1.0.0 netmask 255.255.0.0 dev eth0
# route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway      Genmask      Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.0.0 *                255.255.255.0 U        0      0      0 eth0
default       192.168.0.1 0.0.0.0      UG        0      0      0 eth0

```

Everything is the same, except you use `del` instead of `add`. Now that's easy!

## Troubleshooting Network Problems

Linux distributions nowadays usually "just work" when it comes to networking, but you might still experience an issue. Following are some basic tips for troubleshooting network problems.

If your network interface appears to be up and running, but you can't get on the Internet, first try pinging your localhost device, at 127.0.0.1. If that doesn't work, stop and go no further, because you have a seriously damaged system. If that works, ping your machine's external IP address. If that doesn't work, make sure networking is enabled on your machine. If it does work, now try pinging other machines on your network, assuming you have any. If you're not successful, it's your interface (assuming your router is okay). Make sure that your cables are plugged in (seriously). Use `ifconfig` (or `iwconfig` if it's wireless) to verify the status of your interface and use `ifup` to turn the interface on, if necessary. Then try ping again.

If your attempt to ping another local computer was successful, next try pinging your router. If you can get to other machines on your network, but you can't get to your router, time to check your routing tables with `route` (refer to "[Display Your IP Routing Table](#)"). If you're missing items from your routing table, add them, as detailed in "[Change Your IP Routing Table](#)."

### Note

It's much easier to diagnose and fix problems if you have a baseline from which to work. After you know a machine's networking is correct, run `route` and save the results, so you have a stored blueprint if the routing table goes bonkers and you need to restore something later.

If you can get to your router, try pinging a machine you know will be up and running out on the Internet, like [www.google.com](http://www.google.com) or [www.apple.com](http://www.apple.com). If that doesn't work, try pinging that same machine's IP address. Yes, that means that you need to have some IP addresses on a sticky note or in a text file on your computer for just such an occasion as this. Here are a few that are good right now; of course, they could change, so you really should look these up yourself.

Site	IP Address
<a href="http://www.google.com">www.google.com</a>	72.14.203.99
<a href="http://www.apple.com">www.apple.com</a>	17.254.0.91

<a href="http://www.ubuntu.com">www.ubuntu.com</a>	82.211.81.166
<a href="http://www.ibm.com">www.ibm.com</a>	129.42.16.99
<a href="http://www.granneman.com">www.granneman.com</a>	216.23.180.5

#### Note

How do you get those IP addresses? You can ping the machine using its domain name, and `ping` gives you the IP address, or you can get the same info with `tracert`. A quicker method is with the `host` command, covered earlier in "[Perform DNS Lookups](#)."

If you can get to the IP address, but can't get to the domain name, you have a DNS problem. If you're using DHCP, it's time to run `dhclient` (refer to "[Grab a New Address Using DHCP](#)") to try to renew the DNS information provided by your DHCP server. If you're not using DHCP, find the DNS information you need by looking on your router or asking your administrator or ISP, and then add it manually as root to `/etc/resolv.conf` so that it looks like this, for example:

```
nameserver 24.217.0.5
nameserver 24.217.0.55
```

That's `nameserver` (a required word), followed by an IP address you're supposed to use for the DNS. If your router can handle it, and you know its IP address (192.168.0.1, let's say), you can always try this first:

```
nameserver 192.168.0.1
```

Try `ifdown` and then `ifup` and see if you're good to go. If you're still having problems, time to begin again, starting always with hardware. Is everything seated correctly? Is everything plugged in? After you're sure of that, start checking your software. The worst-case scenario is that your hardware just doesn't have drivers to work with Linux. It's rare, and growing rarer all the time, but it still happens.

Wireless cards, however, can be wildly incompatible with Linux thanks to close-mouthed manufacturers who don't want to help Linux developers make their hardware work. To prevent headaches, it's a good idea to check online to make sure a wireless card you're thinking about purchasing will be copasetic with Linux. Good sites to review include Hardware Supported by Madwifi (<http://madwifi.org/wiki/Compatibility>); Linux Wireless LAN Support (<http://linux-wless.passys.nl/>), which is a bit outdated but still useful; and my constantly updated list of bookmarks relating to Linux and wireless connectivity (<http://del.icio.us/rsgranne/wireless>). When it comes to specific hardware, I can wholeheartedly recommend the Netgear WG511T wireless PCMCIA card. I simply inserted it into my laptop running the latest K/Ubuntu, and it worked immediately.

Oh, and to finish our troubleshooting: If you can successfully ping both the IP address and the domain name, stop reading this—you're online! Go have fun!

## Conclusion

You've covered a wide selection of networking tools in this chapter. Many of them, such as `ifconfig`, `iwconfig`, and `route`, can perform double duty, both informing you about the status of your connectivity and allowing you to change the parameters of your connections. Others are used more for diagnostic purposes, such as `ping`, `traceroute`, and `host`. Finally, some govern your ability to connect to a network at all: `dhclient`, `ifup`, and `ifdown`. If you're serious about Linux, you're going to need to learn all of them. There's nothing more frustrating than a network connection that won't work, but often the right program can fix that problem in a matter of seconds. Know your tools well, and you can fix issues quickly and efficiently as they arise.

## Chapter 15. Working on the Network

Many of the commands in this chapter are so rich in features and power that they deserve books of their own. This book can't begin to cover all of the awesome stuff you can do with `ssh`, `rsync`, `wget`, and `curl`, for instance, but it can get you started. The best thing to do with these commands is to try them, get comfortable with the basics, and then begin exploring the areas that interest you. There's enough to keep you busy for a long time, and after you start using your imagination, you'll discover a world of cool applications for the programs you're going to read about in this chapter.

## Securely Log In to Another Computer

### `ssh`

Because Unix was built with networking in mind, it's no surprise that early developers created programs that would allow you to connect to another computer. Unfortunately, `telnet` was completely insecure. Everything you send using `telnet`—your username, password, and all commands and data—is sent in plain text.

To combat this problem, `ssh` (secure shell) was developed. It can do everything `telnet` can, and then a lot more. Even if you're not in the next room, use `ssh`.

Let's say you want to use the `ssh` command from your laptop (named `pound`, and found at 192.168.0.15) to your desktop (named `eliot`, and found at 192.168.0.25). The following shows you how to do this (you could also use domain names such as `hoohah.granneman.com` if one existed):

```
$ ssh tom@192.168.0.25
tom@192.168.0.25's password:
Linux eliot 2.6.12-10-386 #1 Mon Jan 16 17:18:08 UTC 2006 i686 GNU/Linux
Last login: Mon Feb 6 22:40:31 2006 from 192.168.0.15
[Listing truncated for length]
```

You're prompted for a password after you connect. Type it in (you won't see what you're typing, in order to prevent someone from seeing your password). The prompt shows the name of the remote host, its name, kernel, date and time, and the last time you logged in. You can now run any command you're authorized to run on the remote host.

If this were the first time you'd ever connected to `eliot`, however, you would have seen a different message:

```
$ ssh tom@192.168.0.25
The authenticity of host '192.168.0.25 (192.168.0.25)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 54:53:c3:1c:9a:07:22:0c:82: 7b:38:53:21:23:ce:53.
```

Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)?

Basically, `ssh` is telling you that it doesn't recognize this machine, and it's asking you to verify the machine's identity. Type in

```
Warning: Permanently added '192.168.0.25' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.1
tom@192.168.0.25's password:
```

From here things proceed normally. You only see this message the first time you connect to `eliot` because `ssh` stores that RSA key. Whether the `HashKnownHosts` option has been enabled in your `/etc/ssh/ssh_config` file, that line appears in one of the

```
[View full width]192.168.0.25 ssh-rsa
SkxPUQLYqX
SzknsstN6Bh2MHK5AmC6Epg4psdNL69R5pHbQi3kRWNNNNNO3AmnP1lp2RNNNNNOVjNN9mu5FZel6zK0iKfJBbLh
/Mh9KOhBNtrX6prfcxO9vBEAHYITeLTmMYZLQHbXsr6ehj/9xFxkCHDYldKFmxaffgA6Ou2ZUX5NzP6Rct4cfqAY69E
5cUoDv3xEJ/gj2zv0bh630zehrGc=
```

You can clearly see the IP address as well as the encryption hash, but that's nothing compared to what you'd see if `HashKnownHosts` is

```
[View full width]NNNNNO3AmnP1lp2RNNNNNOVjNNNVRNGaJdxOt3GIrh00lPD6KBIU1kaT6nQoJUMVTx2tWb5KiF/LLD4Zwbv2Z/j
/0czCZIQNPw
DUf6YiKUFFC
6eagqpLDDb4T9qsOajOPLNinRZpcQoPlXflu6j1agfJzqUJUUE+Lwv8yzmPidCvOuCZ0LQH4qfkVNXEQxmyy6iz6b2wp=?
```

Everything is hashed, even the machine's IP address or domain name. This is good from a security standpoint, but it's a problem

```
@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@
@ WARNING: REMOTE HOST IDENTIFICATION HAS CHANGED! @
@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@
IT IS POSSIBLE THAT SOMEONE IS DOING SOMETHING NASTY
Someone could be eavesdropping on you right now (man-in-the-middle attack)!
It is also possible that the RSA host key has just been changed.
The fingerprint for the RSA key sent by the remote host is
19:85:59:5c:6a:24:85:53:07:7a:dc:34:37:c6:72:1b.
Please contact your system administrator.
Add correct host key in /home/pound/.ssh/known_hosts to get rid of this message.
Offending key in /home/pound/.ssh/known_hosts:8
RSA host key for 192.168.0.125 has changed and you have requested strict checking.
Host key verification failed.
```

The problem is that the `ssh` key on `eliot` has changed since the OS has been reinstalled, and when `ssh` checks the key for `eliot` against the `known_hosts` that corresponds to `eliot`, save the file, and reconnect. To `ssh`, this is the first time you've connected, so it adds the key.

If `eliot` is the only machine you ever SSH to, finding the correct line to delete in `known_hosts` is easy because it's the only one.

- AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAtnWqkBg3TVeu00yCQ6XOVH1xnG6aDbWHZIGk2gJo5XvS/YYQ4Mj
- NNNNO3AmnP1lp2RNNNNNOVjNNNVRNGaJdxOt3GIrh00lPD6KBIU1kaT6nQoJUMVTx2tWb5KiF/LLD4Zwbv2Z/j
- AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAtnWqkBg3TVeu00yCQ6XOVH1xnG6aDbWHZIGk2gJo5XvS/YYQ4Mj

Hard to tell, eh? Because you can't tell, you really have no choice but to delete every line, which means that you have to re-add every machine you ever SSH to.



## Securely Log In to Another Machine Without a Password

### ssh

The name of this section might appear to be a misnomer, but it's entirely possible to log in to a machine via `ssh`, but without providing a password. If you log in every day to a particular computer (and there are some boxes that I might log in to several times a day), the techniques in this section will make you very happy.

Let's say you want to make it possible to log in to `eliot` (username: `tom`) from `pound` (username: `ezra`) without requiring that you type a password. To start with, create an `ssh` authentication key on `pound` using the following command:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t dsa
Generating public/private dsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/home/ezra/.ssh/id_dsa):
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /home/ezra/.ssh/id_dsa.
Your public key has been saved in /home/ezra/.ssh/id_dsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
30:a4:a7:31:27:d1:61:82:e7:66:ae:ed:6b:96:3c:24 ezra@pound
```

Accept the default location in which to save the key by pressing `Enter`, and leave the passphrase field blank as well by pressing `Enter` twice when asked. You just created a private key at `~/.ssh/id_dsa` and a public key at `~/.ssh/id_dsa.pub`.

Now you need to transfer the public keynot the private key!from `pound` to `eliot`. The developers behind `ssh` are way ahead of you, and have created a program that makes this as easy as falling off a log. To automatically copy your public key from `pound` to `eliot`, just enter the following on `pound`:

```
$ ssh-copy-id -i ~/.ssh/id_dsa.pub tom@192.168.0.25
```

Now try logging into the machine, with `ssh 'tom@192.168.0.25'`, and check in `.ssh/authorized_keys` to make sure you haven't added extra keys that you weren't expecting.

You're done (although if you want to follow the advice given by `ssh-copy-id`, go right ahead). Watch what happens when you use the `ssh` command from `pound` to `eliot` now:

```
$ ssh tom@192.168.0.25
Linux eliot 2.6.12-10-386 #1 Mon Jan 16 17:18:08 UTC 2006 i686 GNU/Linux
Last login: Mon Feb 6 22:40:31 2006 from 192.168.0.15
```

Notice that you weren't asked to enter a password, which is exactly what you wanted.

Some of you are wondering about the security of this trick. No passwords? Freely exchanging keys? It's true, but think about it for a moment. True, if someone gets on `pound`, he can now connect to `eliot` without a password. But that simply means that you need to practice good security on `pound`. If `pound` is

compromised, you have enormous problems whether or not the attacker realizes that he can also get to `eliot`. On top of that, you shoot passwords around the Internet all the time. If an attacker acquires your password, he can do major damage as well. Isn't your private key as important as a password? And aren't you going to back it up and safeguard it? When you think about it in those terms, exchanging keys via `ssh` is at least as secure as passwords, and in most ways much more secure.

Nonetheless, if you prefer to keep using passwords, that's certainly your prerogative. That's what open source and Linux is all about: choice.

## Securely Transfer Files Between Machines

### `sftp`

In the same way that `ssh` is a far better choice than `telnet`, SFTP is far better than FTP. Like `telnet`, FTP sends your name and password, as well as all the data being transferred, in the clear so that anyone sniffing packets can listen in. SFTP, on the other hand, uses `ssh` to encrypt everything: username, passwords, and traffic. Other than the fact it's about a million times more secure, it's remarkably similar to FTP in its commands, which should make it easy to learn and use.

If you can access a machine via `ssh`, you can also SFTP to it. To use the `sftp` command from `pound` (192.168.0.15; username `ezra`) to `eliot` (192.168.0.25; username `tom`), just use this command:

```
$ sftp tom@192.168.0.25
Connecting to 192.168.0.25...
tom@192.168.0.25's password:
sftp>
```

If you've read the previous section, "[Securely Log In to Another Machine Without a Password](#)," you might be wondering why you were prompted for a password. You're correct: The preceding example was taken before a connection that didn't require a password was set. After you've done that, you would instead see a login that looks like this:

```
$ sftp tom@192.168.0.25
Connecting to 192.168.0.25...
sftp>
```

After you're logged in via `sftp`, the commands you can run are pretty standard. [Table 15.1](#) lists some of the more common commands; for the full list, look at `man sftp`.

**Table 15.1. Useful SFTP Commands**

Command	Meaning
<code>cd</code>	Change directory
<code>exit</code>	Close the connection to the remote SSH

get	server Copy the specified file to the local machine
help	Get help on commands
lcd	Change the directory on the local machine
lls	List files on the local machine
ls	List files in the working directory on the remote SSH server
put	Copy the specified file to the remote SSH server
rm	Remove the specified file from the remote SSH server

## Securely Copy Files Between Hosts

### scp

If you're in a hurry and you need to copy a file securely from one machine to another, `scp` (secure copy) is what you want. In essence, here's the basic pattern for using `scp`:

```
scp user@host1:file1 user@host2:file2
```

This is basically the same syntax as good ol' `cp`, but now extended to the network. An example will make things clearer. Let's say you want to copy `backup.sh` from `pound` (192.168.0.15; username `ezra`) to `/home/tom/bin` on `eliot` (129.168.0.25; username `tom`) using `scp`:

```
$ pwd
/home/ezra
$ ls ~/bin
backup.sh
$ scp ~/bin/backup.sh tom@192.168.0.25/home/tom/bin
backup.sh          100% 8806      8.6KB/s   00:00
$
```

You weren't prompted for a password because you set things up earlier in "[Securely Log In to Another Machine Without a Password](#)" so `ssh` doesn't require passwords to connect from `pound` to `eliot`, and

because `scp` relies on `ssh`, you don't need a password here, either. If you hadn't done that, you would have been asked to enter `tom`'s password before continuing.

Let's say you have several JPEGs you want to transfer from `pound` to `eliot`. No problem—just use a wildcard:

```
$ ls -l ~/covers
earth_wind_&_fire.jpg
handel_-_chamber_music.jpg
smiths_best_1.jpg
strokes_-_is_this_it.jpg
u2_pop.jpg
$ scp *.jpg tom@192.168.0.25:/home/tom/album_covers
earth_wind_&_fire.jpg      100%    44KB   43.8KB/s
handel_-_chamber_music.jpg 100%    12KB   12.3KB/s
smiths_best_1.jpg         100%    47KB   47.5KB/s
strokes_-_is_this_it.jpg  100%    38KB   38.3KB/s
u2_pop.jpg                100%     9222
9.0KB/sQ
```

Now let's say you want to go the other direction. You're still on `pound`, and you want to copy several pictures of Libby from `eliot` to `pound`, and into a different directory than the one in which you currently are in:

```
$ scp tom@192.168.0.25:/home/tom/pictures/dog/libby* ~/pix/libby
libby_in_window_1.20020611.jpg 100%   172KB  172.4KB/s
libby_in_window_2.20020611.jpg 100%   181KB  180.8KB/s
libby_in_window_3.20020611.jpg 100%   197KB  196.7KB/s
libby_in_window_4.20020611.jpg 100%   188KB  187.9KB/s
```

The `scp` command is really useful when you need to securely copy files between machines. If you have many files to copy, however, you'll find that `scp` can quickly grow tiresome. In cases like that, you might want to look at SFTP or a mounted Samba share (which is covered in "[Mount a Samba Filesystem](#)," found in [Chapter 16](#), "[Windows Networking](#)").

## Securely Transfer and Back Up Files

### **`rsync -v`**

`rsync` is one of the coolest, most useful programs ever invented, and many people rely on it every day (like me!). What does it do? Its uses are myriad (here we go again into "you could write a book about this command!"), but let's focus on one very powerful, necessary feature: its capability to back up files effectively and securely, with a minimum of network traffic.

Let's say you intend to back up 2GB of files every night from a machine named `coleridge` (username: `sam`) to another computer named `wordsworth` (username: `will`). Without `rsync`, you're looking at a transfer of 2GB every single night, a substantial amount of traffic, even on a fast network connection. With `rsync`, however, you might be looking at a transfer that will take a few moments at most. Why? Because when `rsync` backs up those 2GB, it transfers only the differences between all the files that make up those 2GB of data. If only a few hundred kilobytes changed in the past 24 hours, that's all that `rsync` transfers. If instead it was 100MB, that's what `rsync` copies over. Either way, it's much less than 2GB.

Here's a command that, run from `coleridge`, transfers the entire content of the `documents` directory to a backup directory on `wordsworth`. Look at the command, look at the results, and then you can walk through what those options mean (the command is given first with long options instead of single letters for readability, and then with single letters, if available for comparison).

```
[View full width]$ rsync --verbose --progress --stats --recursive --times --perms --links --compress
--rsh=ssh --delete /home/sam/documents/will@wordsworth:/media/backup/documents

$ rsync -v --progress --stats -r -t -p -l -z -e ssh --delete /home/sam/documents/
will@wordsworth:/media/backup/documents
```

Of course, you could also run the command this way, if you wanted to combine all the options:

```
[View full width]$ rsync -vrtplze ssh --progress --stats --delete /home/sam/documents/ will@wordsworth:/media/backup/documents
```

Upon running `rsync` using any of the methods listed, you'd see something like this:

```
building file list ...
107805 files to consider
deleting clientele/Linux_Magazine/do_it_yourself/13/gantt_chart.txt~
deleting Security/diebold_voting/black_box_voting/bbv_chapter-9.pdf

deleting E-commerce/Books/20050811 eBay LIL ABNER DAILIES 6 1940.txt
Security/electronic_voting/diebold/black_box_voting/bbv_chapter-9.pdf
legal_issues/free_speech/Timeline A history of free speech.txt
E-commerce/2005/Books/20050811 eBay LIL ABNER DAILIES 6 1940.txt

connectivity/connectivity_info.txt
[Results greatly truncated for length]
Number of files: 107805
Number of files transferred: 120
Total file size: 6702042249 bytes
Total transferred file size: 15337159 bytes

File list size: 2344115

Total bytes sent: 2345101
Total bytes received: 986
sent 2345101 bytes received 986 bytes 7507.48 bytes/sec
total size is 6702042249 speedup is 2856.69
```

Take a look at those results. `rsync` first builds a list of all files that it must consider 107,805 in this case and then deletes files on the target (`wordsworth`) that no longer exist on the source (`coleridge`). In this example, three files are deleted: a backup file (the `~` is a giveaway on that one) from an article for Linux Magazine, a PDF on electronic voting, and then a receipt for a purchased book.

After deleting files, `rsync` copies over any that have changed, or if it's the same file, just the changes to the file, which is one of what makes `rsync` so slick. In this case, four files are copied over. It turns out that the PDF was actually moved to a subdirectory, but to `rsync` it's a new file, so it's copied over in its entirety.

The same is true for the text receipt. The `A history of free speech.txt` file is an entirely new file, so it's copied over to `wordsworth` as well.

After listing the changes it made, `rsync` gives you some information about the transfer as a whole. 120 files were transferred, 15337159 bytes (about 14MB) out of 6702042249 bytes (around 6.4GB). Other data points are contained in the summation, but those are the key ones.

Now let's look at what you asked your computer to do. The head and tail of the command are easy to understand: the command `rsync` at the start, then options, and then the source directory you're copying from (`/home/sam/documents/`, found on `coleridge`), followed by the target directory you're copying to (`/media/backup/documents`, found on `wordsworth`). Before going on to examine the options, you need to focus on the way the source and target directories are designated because there's a catch in there that will really hurt if you don't watch it.

You want to copy the contents of the `documents` directory found on `coleridge`, but not the directory itself, and that's why you use `documents/` and not `documents`. The slash after `documents` in `/home/sam/documents/` tells `rsync` that you want to copy the contents of that directory into the `documents` directory found on `wordsworth`; if you instead used `documents`, you'd copy the directory and its contents, resulting in `/media/backup/documents/documents` on `wordsworth`.

#### Note

The slash is only important on the source directory; it doesn't matter whether you use a slash on the target directory.

There's one option that wasn't listed previously but is still a good idea to include when you're figuring out how your `rsync` command will be structured: `-n` (or `--dry-run`). If you include that option, `rsync` runs, but doesn't actually delete or copy anything. This can be a lifesaver if your choices would have resulted in the deletion of important files. Before committing to your `rsync` command, especially if you're including the `--delete` option, do yourself a favor and perform a dry run first!

Now on to the options you used. The `-v` (or `--verbose`) option, coupled with `--progress`, orders `rsync` to tell you in detail what it's doing at all times. You saw that in the results shown earlier in this section, in which `rsync` tells you what it's deleting and what it's copying. If you're running `rsync` via an automated script, you don't need this option, although it doesn't hurt; if you're running `rsync` interactively, this is an incredibly useful display of information to have in front of you because you can see what's happening.

The metadata you saw at the end of `rsync`'s results—the information about the number and size of files transferred, as well as other interesting data—appeared because you included the `--stats` option. Again, if you're scripting `rsync`, this isn't needed, but it's sure nice to see if you're running the program manually.

You've seen the `-r` (or `--recursive`) option many other times with other commands, and it does here what it does everywhere else. Instead of stopping in the current directory, it tunnels down through all subdirectories, affecting everything in its path. Because you want to copy the entire `documents` directory and all of its contents, you want to use `-r`.

The `-t` (or `--times`) option makes `rsync` transfer the files' modification times along with the files. If you don't include this option, `rsync` cannot tell what it has previously transferred, and the next time you run the command, all files are copied over again. This is probably not the behavior you want, as it completely obviates the features that make `rsync` so useful, so be sure to include `-t`.

Permissions were discussed in [Chapter 7, "Ownerships and Permissions,"](#) and here they reappear again. The `-p` (or `--perms`) option tells `rsync` to update permissions on any files found on the target so they match what's on the source. It's part of making the backup as accurate as possible, so it's a good idea.

When a soft link is found on the source, the `-l` (or `--links`) option re-creates the link on the target. Instead of copying the actual file, which is obviously not what the creator of a soft link intended, the link to the file is copied over, again preserving the original state of the source.

Even over a fast connection, it's a good idea to use the `-z` (or `--compress`) option, as `rsync` then uses `gzip` compression while transferring files. On a slow connection, this option is mandatory; on a fast connection, it saves you that much more time.

In the name of security, you're using the `-e` (or `--rsh=ssh`) option, which tells `rsync` to tunnel all of its traffic using `ssh`. Easy file transfers, and secure as well? Sign me up!

#### Note

If you're using `ssh`, why didn't you have to provide a password? Because you used the technique displayed in ["Securely Copying Files from One Machine to Another Machine Without a Password"](#) to remove the need to do so.

We've saved the most dangerous for last: `--delete`. If you're creating a mirror of your files, you obviously want that mirror to be as accurate as possible. That means deleted files on the source need to be deleted on the target as well. But that also means you can accidentally blow away stuff you wanted to keep. If you're going to use the `--delete` option and you probably will be sure to use the `-n` (or `--dry-run`) option that was discussed at the beginning of your look at `rsync` options.

`rsync` has many other options and plenty of other ways to use the command (the `man` page identifies eight ways it can be used, which is impressive), but the setup discussed in this section will definitely get you started. Open up `man rsync` in your terminal, or search Google for "rsync tutorial," and you'll find a wealth of great information. Get to know `rsync`; you yell out "Oh no!" upon deleting a file, but then follow it with "Whew! It's backed up using `rsync`!" you'll be glad you took the time to learn this incredibly versatile and useful command.

#### Tip

If you want to be really safe with your data, set up `rsync` to run with a regular `cron` job. For instance, create a file titled `backup.sh` (`~/bin` is a good place for it) and type in the command you've been using:

```
[View full width]$ rsync --verbose --progress --stats --recursive --times --perms --links --compress --rsh=ssh --delete /home/sam/documents/ will@wordsworth:/media/backup/documents
```

Use `chmod` to make the file executable:

```
$ chmod 744 /home/scott/bin/backup.sh
```

Then add the following lines to a file named `cronfile` (I put mine in my `~/bin` directory as well):

```
# backup documents every morning at 3:05 am
05 03 * * * /home/scott/bin/backup.sh
```

The first line is a comment explaining the purpose of the job, and the second line tells `cron` to automatically run `/home/scott/bin/backup.sh` every night at 3:05 a.m.

Now add the job to `cron`:

```
$ crontab /home/scott/bin/cronfile
```

Now you don't need to worry about your backups ever again. It's all automated for you just make sure you leave your computers on overnight!

(For more on `cron`, see `man cron` or "Newbie: Intro to cron" at [www.unixgeeks.org/security/newbie/unix/cron-1.html](http://www.unixgeeks.org/security/newbie/unix/cron-1.html).)

## Download Files Non-interactively

### **wget**

The Net is a treasure trove of pictures, movies, and music that are available for downloading. The problem is that manually downloading every file from a collection of 200 MP3s quickly grows tedious, leading to mind rot and uncontrollable drooling. The `wget` command is used to download files and websites without any interference; you set the command in motion and it happily downloads whatever you specified, for hours on end.

The tricky part, of course, is setting up the command. `wget` is another super-powerful program that really deserves a book all to itself, so we don't have space to show you everything it can do. Instead, you're going to focus on doing two things with `wget`: downloading a whole mess of files, which is looked at here, and downloading entire websites, which is covered in the next section.

Here's the premise: You find a wonderful website called "The Old Time Radio Archives." On this website are a large number of vintage radio shows, available for download in MP3 format 365 MP3s, to be exact, one for every day of the year. It would sure be nice to grab those MP3s, but the prospect of right-clicking on every MP3 hyperlink, choosing Save Link As, and then clicking OK to start the download isn't very appealing.

Examining the directory structure a bit more, you notice that the MP3s are organized in a directory structure like this:

```
http://www.OLDTIMERADIOARCHIVES.com/mp3/
    season_10/
    season_11/

    ...
    season_20/

    ...
    season_3/
    season_4/
    ...
    season_9/
```



## Note

The directories are not sorted in numerical order, as humans would do it, but in alphabetical order, which is how computers sort numbers unless told otherwise. After all, "ten" comes before "three" alphabetically.

Inside each directory sit the MP3s. Some directories have just a few files in them, and some have close to 20. If you click on the link to a directory, you get a web page that lists the files in that directory like this:

```
[BACK] Parent Directory      19-May-2002 01:03      -
[SND]  1944-12-24_532.mp3    06-Jul-2002 13:54     6.0M
[SND]  1944-12-31_533.mp3    06-Jul-2002 14:28     6.5M
[SND]  1945-01-07_534.mp3    06-Jul-2002 20:05     6.8M
```

[SND] is a GIF image of musical notes that shows up in front of every file listing.

So the question is, how do you download all of these MP3s that have different filenames and exist in different directories? The answer is `wget`!

Start by creating a directory on your computer into which you'll download the MP3 files.

```
$ mkdir radio_mp3s
```

Now use the `cd` command to get into that directory, and then run `wget`:

```
$ cd radio_mp3s
$ wget -r -l2 -np -w 5 -A.mp3 -temp0281.html,.gif http://www.oldsimeradioarchives.com/mp3/`
```

Let's walk through this command and its options.

`wget` is the command you're running, of course, and at the far end is the URL that you want `wget` to use: <http://www.oldsimeradioarchives.com/mp3>. The important stuff, though, lies in between the command and the URL.

The `-r` (or `--recursive`) option for `wget` follows links and goes down through directories in search of files. By telling `wget` that it is to act recursively, you ensure that `wget` will go through every season's directory, grabbing all the MP3s it finds.

The `-l2` (or `--level=[#]`) option is important yet tricky. It tells `wget` how deep it should go in retrieving files recursively. The lowercase `l` stands for level and the number is the depth to which `wget` should descend. If you specified `-l1` for level one, `wget` would look in the `/mp3` directory only. That would result in a download of...nothing. Remember, the `/mp3` directory contains other subdirectories: `season_10`, `season_11`, and so on, and those are directories that contain the MP3s you want. By specifying `-l2`, you're asking `wget` to first enter `/mp3` (which would be level one), and then go into each `season_#` directory in turn and grab anything in it. You need to be very careful with the level you specify. If you aren't careful, you can easily fill your hard drive in very little time.

One of the ways to avoid downloading more than you expected is to use the `-np` (or `--no-parent`) option, which prevents `wget` from recursing into the parent directory. If you look back at the preceding list of files, you'll note that the very first link is the parent directory. In other words, when in `/season_10`, the parent is `/mp3`. The same is true for `/season_11`, `/season_12`, and so on. You don't want `wget` to go up, however, you want it to go down. And you certainly don't need to waste time by going up into the same directory every time you're in a season's directory.

This next option isn't required, but it would sure be polite of you to use it. The `-w` (or `--wait=[#]`) option introduces a short wait between each file download. This helps prevent overloading the server as you hammer it continuously for files. By default, the number is interpreted by `wget` as seconds; if you want, you can also specify minutes by appending `m` after the number, or hours with `h`, or even days with `d`.

Now it gets very interesting. The `-A` (or `--accept`) option emphasizes to `wget` that you only want to download files of a certain type and nothing else. The `A` stands for accept, and it's followed by the file suffixes that you want, separated by commas. You only want one kind of file type, MP3, so that's all you specify: `-A.mp3`.

On the flip side, the `-R` (or `--reject`) option tells `wget` what you don't want: HTML and GIF files. By refusing those, you don't get those little musical notes represented by `[SND]` shown previously. Separate your list of suffixes with a comma, giving you `-temp0281.html,.gif`.

Running `wget` with those options results in a download of 365 MP3s to your computer. If, for some reason, the transfer was interrupted—your router dies, someone trips over your Ethernet cable and yanks it out of your box, a backhoe rips up the fiber coming in to your business—just repeat the command, but add the `-c` (or `--continue`) option. This tells `wget` to take over from where it was forced to stop. That way you don't download everything all over again.

Here's another example that uses `wget` to download files. A London DJ released two albums worth of MP3s consisting of mash-ups of The Beatles and The Beastie Boys, giving us The Beastles, of course. The MP3s are listed, one after the other, on [www.djbc.net/beastles](http://www.djbc.net/beastles).

The following command pulls the links out of that web page, writes them to a file, and then starts downloading those links using `wget`:

```
$ dog --links http://www.djbc.net/beastles/ | grep mp3 > beastles ; wget -i beastles
--12:58:12-- http://www.djbc.net/beastles/webcontent/djbc-holdittogethernow.mp3
=> 'djbc-holdittogethernow.mp3'
Resolving www.djbc.net... 216.227.209.173
Connecting to www.djbc.net|216.227.209.173|:80... connected.
HTTP request sent, awaiting response... 200 OK
Length: 4,533,083 (4.3M) [audio/mpeg]
100%[=====>] 4,533,083 203.20K/s ETA 00:00
12:58:39 (166.88 KB/s) - 'djbc-holdittogethernow.mp3' saved [4533083/4533083]
```

In [Chapter 5, "Viewing Files,"](#) you learned about `cat`, which outputs files to `STDOUT`. The ["Concatenate Files and Number the Lines"](#) section mentioned a better `cat`, known as `dog` (which is true because dogs are better than cats). If you invoke `dog` with the `--links` option and point it at a URL, the links are pulled out of the page and displayed on `STDOUT`. You pipe those links to `grep`, asking `grep` to filter out all but lines containing `mp3`, and then redirect the resulting MP3 links to a text file named `beastles` (piping and redirecting are covered in [Chapter 4, "Building Blocks,"](#) and the `grep` command is covered in [Chapter 9, "Finding Stuff: Easy"](#)).

The semicolon (covered in the ["Run Several Commands Sequentially"](#) section in [Chapter 4](#)) ends that command and starts a new one: `wget`. The `-i` (or `--input-file`) option tells `wget` to look in a file for the

URLs to download, instead of STDIN. If you have many links, put them all in a file and use the `-i` option with `wget`. In this case, you point `wget` to the `beasties` file you just created via `dog` and `grep`, and the MP3s begin to download, one after the other.

Now really, what could be easier? Ah, the power of the Linux command line!

## Download Websites Non-interactively

### `wget`

If you want to back up your website or download another website, look to `wget`. In the previous section you used `wget` to grab individual files, but you can use it to obtain entire sites as well.

#### Note

Please be reasonable with `wget`. Don't download enormous sites, and keep in mind that someone creates and owns the sites that you're copying. Don't copy a site because you want to "steal" it.

Let's say you're buzzing around a site at [www.neato.com](http://www.neato.com) and you find yourself at [www.neato.com/articles/index.htm](http://www.neato.com/articles/index.htm). You'd like to copy everything in the `/articles` section, but you don't want anything else on the site. The following command does what you'd like:

```
$ wget -E -r -k -p -w 5 -np http://www.neato.com/articles/index.htm
```

You could have combined the options this way, as well:

```
$ wget -Erkp -w 5 -np http://www.neato.com/articles/index.htm
```

As in the previous section, the command begins with `wget` and ends with the URL you want to use. You looked at the `-w` (or `--wait=[#]`) option before, and that's the same, as well as `-np` (or `--no-parent`) and `-r` (or `--recursive`). Let's examine the new options that have been introduced in this example.

When you download a site, some of the pages might not end with `.htm` or `.html`; instead, they might end with `.asp`, `.php`, `.cfm`, or something else. The problem comes in if you try to view the downloaded site on your computer. If you're running a web server on your desktop, things might look just fine, but more than likely you're not running Apache on your desktop. Even without a web server, however, pages ending in `.htm` or `.html` will work on your box if you open them with a web browser. If you use the `-E` (or `--html-extension`) option, `wget` converts every page so that it ends with `.html`, thus enabling you to view them on your computer without any special software.

Downloading a site might introduce other issues, however, which you can fortunately get around with the right `wget` options. Links on the pages you download with `wget` might not work after you open the pages on your computer, making it impossible to navigate from page to page. By specifying the `-k` (or `--convert-links`) option, you order `wget` to rewrite links in the pages so they work on your computer.

This option fixes not only links to pages, but also links to pictures, Cascading Style Sheets, and files. You'll be glad you used it.

Speaking of Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) and images, they're why you want to use the `-p` (or `--page-requisites`) option. In order for the web page to display correctly, the web developer might have specified images, CSS, and JavaScript files to be used along with the page's HTML. The `-p` option requires that `wget` download any files needed to display the web pages that you're grabbing. With it, looking at the page after it's on your machine duplicates what you saw on the Web; without it, you might end up with an unreadable file.

The man page for `wget` is enormously long and detailed, and it's where you will ultimately end up if you want to use `wget` in a more sophisticated way. If you think `wget` sounds interesting to you, start reading. You'll learn a lot.

## Download Sequential Files and Internet Resources

### `curl`

At first blush, `wget` and `curl` seem similar: Both download files non-interactively. They each have one large difference distinguishing them, however, among many smaller ones: `curl` supports sequences and sets in specifying what to download, which `wget` does not, while `wget` supports recursion, a feature missing from `curl`.

#### Note

The programs have plenty of other differences. The full list of `curl`'s features can be seen at "FeaturesWhat Can `curl` Do" (<http://curl.haxx.se/docs/features.html>), while some of `wget`'s are listed at "Overview" ([www.gnu.org/software/wget/manual/html\\_node/Overview.html#Overview](http://www.gnu.org/software/wget/manual/html_node/Overview.html#Overview)). The cURL site has a chart comparing `curl` to other, similar programs at "Compare cURL Features with Other FTP+HTTP Tools" (<http://curl.haxx.se/docs/comparison-table.html>); while informative, the chart is (unsurprisingly) a bit biased toward `curl`.

Here's an example that uses `curl`'s capability to support sequences in specifying what to download. The excellent National Public Radio show This American Life makes archives of all of its shows available for download on its parent website in Real Audio format (why they chose Real and not a more open format is a mystery). If you want to download 10 of these Real Audio files, just use the following:

```
$ curl -O http://www.wbez.org/ta/[1-10].rm
[1/10]: http://www.wbez.org/ta/1.rm --> 1.rm
--curl--http://www.wbez.org/ta/1.rm
```

Notice how you used `[1-10].rm` to specify that you wanted to download `1.rm`, `2.rm`, `3.rm`, and so on. If WBEZ had instead named the files `one.rm`, `two.rm`, and `three.rm`, for example, you could have used a part set instead:

```
$ curl -O http://www.wbez.org/ta/{one,two,three}.rm
```

The `-O` (or `--remote-name`) option is absolutely required. If you don't use it, `curl` writes the output of the download to `STDOUT`, which means that your terminal will quickly fill with unusable goobledygook. The `-O` asks `curl` to write out what it downloads to a file, and to use the name of the file being downloaded as the local filename as well.

We've barely scratched the surface of `curl`. Its `man` page, while not as long as `wget`'s, is also full of useful information that you need to read if you're going to maximize your use of `curl`. Consider it required reading.

## Conclusion

The commands in this chapter are some of my personal favorites, as they allow me to accomplish tasks that would otherwise be overly tedious, unsafe, or difficult. All of them make the network just another avenue for your data, your programs, and your imagination, and that's really where Linux shines. By making tools as powerful as `ssh`, `rsync`, `wget`, and `curl` freely available to users, Linux encourages innovation and safety in a way that's just not possible on another operating system that many people are forced to use. Jump in and learn `ssh` so you can securely connect to other computers, master `rsync` for safe and automated backups, and rely on `wget` and `curl` to specifically download needed content in as efficient a manner as possible. You'll be glad you did!

## Chapter 16. Windows Networking

Samba is one of the most important open-source projects in the world because it makes it possible for Linux (and other Unix machines, such as Mac OS X) to use Server Message Block (SMB), the networking protocol used on all Microsoft Windows machines. With Samba, Unix machines can connect to and mount shares on Windows machines, and print to shared printers connected to Windows machines. Unix machines can also set up Samba-based printer and file shares that Windows machines can connect to and use. In fact, Samba is so useful that you don't even need Windows machines in the equation. You might choose to implement Samba for file and printer sharing on a network of Linux machines because it works so well.

Many good books cover how to set up Samba on a server, so we're not going to cover administrative commands such as `smbd`, `smbcacs`, or `smbpasswd` (which, it is true, can be run by normal users to change their own passwords, but in practice is almost always run by the Samba server admin), or how to configure `smb.conf`. Instead, this chapter assumes you already have SMB shares set up on a Windows, Linux, or Mac OS X machine. You're instead going to focus on the client end of things: how to find out where those shares are, how to connect to those shares, and how to mount shares on your hard drive.

### Tip

Some good books on setting up and administering Samba include

- Sams Samba Unleashed, ISBN: 0672318628; by Steve Litt
- Sams Teach Yourself Samba in 24 Hours, 2nd Edition, ISBN: 0672322692; by Gerald Carter
- The Official Samba-3 HOWTO and Reference Guide at <http://samba.org/samba/docs/man/Samba-HOWTO-Collection/> is excellent.

## Discover the Workgroup's Master Browsers

```
nmblookup -M [Master Browser]
nmblookup -S [NetBIOS name]
nmblookup -A [IP address]
```

A Samba server actually uses two daemons: `smbd`, which makes the shares available, and `nmbd`, which maps the NetBIOS names that identify machines using SMB to their IP addresses, thus making it possible to find and browse SMB shares. You're going to focus for now on commands that communicate with `nmbd`, used to gain some overall information about the Windows workgroup you're querying.

### Note

The following examples assume you're using a Windows workgroup, and not a domain. A workgroup is essentially a small group of machines that choose to identify themselves as belonging together by self-identifying as members of the workgroup. A domain uses a central server or several servers in a large network to authenticate computers and users who want to join the network. Domains are large, hairy, complicated beasts, and you're best referred to the books referenced in this chapter's introduction if you want to learn more about them.

In a Windows workgroup, you need a machine that keeps track of the other members of the workgroup what their SMB names and IP addresses are, for instance. That machine is known as the Master Browser. But which computer in a workgroup is the Master? The one that is elected, based on the operating system it's running. The latest and greatest OS always wins, so XP will always beat 2000, which will always beat 98.

When setting up a Samba server, however, it's possible to configure things so the server always stays out of any such election, letting other machines duke it out, or set things up so that the server always wins any election. You could go ahead and start connecting to Samba shares if you knew about them, but it helps to know where your Master Browsers are in case you have any issues.

To query your network for a Master Browser, run `nmblookup` with the `-M` (or `--master-browser`) option, followed by a `-` at the end, which basically means "find me a Master Browser." The problem is that you can't use a `-` on the command line, or the shell thinks it's the start of an option. So you need to preface it with `--` first, which tells the shell that the following `-` is in fact a `-`, and not part of an option.

```
$ nmblookup -M -- -
querying __MSBROWSE__ on 192.168.1.255
192.168.1.151 __MSBROWSE__<01>
192.168.1.104 __MSBROWSE__<01>
```

This isn't good. In your case, you appear to have two Master Browsers on one network, which can be a real problem because different Masters might know about different machines at different times, causing mass confusion to users. One minute a user can get to a machine, and the next it's gone. Why? Because one Master knows about the machine, but the other doesn't. Try explaining that to Bob in Accounting. Yipes.

To get more information about the Master, use `nmblookup` with the `-S` (or `--status`) option, which returns the SMB names the host uses.

```
$ nmblookup -S 192.168.1.151
querying 192.168.1.151 on 192.168.1.255
name_query failed to find name 192.168.1.151
```

That didn't work because `-S` expects a NetBIOS name instead of an IP address. Unfortunately, you don't know the machine's NetBIOS name, only its IP address. Actually, that's not a problem. You simply add the `-A` (or `--lookup-by-ip`) option, which tells `nmblookup` that you're giving it an IP address instead of a NetBIOS name.

```
$ nmblookup -SA 192.168.1.151
Looking up status of 192.168.1.151
JANSMAC      <00> -          B <ACTIVE>
JANSMAC      <03> -          B <ACTIVE>
JANSMAC      <20> -          B <ACTIVE>
.._MSBROWSE_. <01> - <GROUP> B <ACTIVE>
MILTON       <00> - <GROUP> B <ACTIVE>
MILTON       <1d> -          B <ACTIVE>
MILTON       <1e> - <GROUP> B <ACTIVE>

MAC Address = 00-00-00-00-00-00
```

Now you know that the machine at 192.168.1.151 identifies itself as JANSMAC (it must be a Mac OS box) and is the Master for the MILTON workgroup. What about the other IP address?

```
$ nmblookup -SA 192.168.1.104
Looking up status of 192.168.1.104
ELIOT        <00> -          B <ACTIVE>
ELIOT        <03> -          B <ACTIVE>
ELIOT        <20> -          B <ACTIVE>
.._MSBROWSE_. <01> - <GROUP> B <ACTIVE>
TURING       <00> - <GROUP> B <ACTIVE>
TURING       <1d> -          B <ACTIVE>
TURING       <1e> - <GROUP> B <ACTIVE>

MAC Address = 00-00-00-00-00-00
```

The computer found at 192.168.1.104 has a NetBIOS name of ELIOT, and is the Master for the TURING workgroup. So actually you have nothing to worry about, as the two machines are each a Master for a separate Workgroup. Machines that self-identify as members of MILTON look to JANSMAC for information, while those that consider themselves part of TURING use ELIOT for the same purpose.

#### Note

For more information about what the output in these examples means, see <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/q163409/> in Microsoft's Knowledge Base.

## Query and Map NetBIOS Names and IP Addresses

### **nmblookup -T**

You can use `nmblookup` as a quick way to find any machines that are sharing files and printers via Samba. Append the `-T` option to the command, followed by `" * "` (and yes, you must include the quotation marks to tell the shell that you're not using the `*` as a wildcard representing the files in your current working directory).

```
$ nmblookup -T " * "
querying * on 192.168.1.255
192.168.1.151 *<00>
192.168.1.104 *<00>
192.168.1.10 *<00>
```

Three machines are on this LAN with Samba shares. To find out which of those are Master Browsers, see the previous section; to produce a list of the shares offered by each computer, proceed to the next section.

## List a Machine's Samba Shares

### **smbclient**

So you know that a machine has Samba shares on it, thanks to the commands outlined in the previous section, but you don't know what those shares are. The `smbclient` command is a versatile tool that can be used to connect to shares and work with them; at a more simple level, however, it can also list the shares available on a computer. Just use the `-L` (or `--list`) option, followed by the NetBIOS name or IP address. When prompted for a password, simply press Enter.

```
$ smbclient -L ELIOT
Password:
Anonymous login successful
Domain=[TURING] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.0.14a-Ubuntu]
Sharename Type Comment

print$      Disk Printer Drivers
documents   Disk Shared presentations and other files
IPC$        IPC IPC Service (eliot server (Samba, Ubuntu))
ADMIN$      IPC IPC Service (eliot server (Samba, Ubuntu))
Anonymous login successful
Domain=[TURING] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.0.14a- Ubuntu]
```

In this case, you can see all of the shares that are available either to an anonymous logon or have been marked as being able to be browsed in the server's `smb.conf` file. To see the shares available to you if you were to log on, add the `-U` (or `--user`) option, followed by your Samba username as found on the Samba server.



## Note

Your Samba username might or might not be the same as your Linux (or Windows or Mac OS X) username on the Samba server. You need to look on the Samba server to make sure.

```
$ smbclient -L ELIOT -U scott
Password:
Domain=[ELIOT] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.0.14a- Ubuntu]
Sharename Type Comment

print$      Disk Printer Drivers
documents   Disk Shared presentations and other files
IPC$        IPC IPC Service (eliot server (Samba, Ubuntu))
ADMIN$      IPC IPC Service (eliot server (Samba, Ubuntu))
scott       Disk Home Directories
Domain=[ELIOT] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.0.14a- Ubuntu]
```

When you log in, you now see a new share, `scott` the home directory of this user. This also tells you that you can log in, which brings you to the next section, in which you log in and actually use the stuff you find on the share.

## Tip

If you want to test the shares you just created on a Samba server, an excellent method is to open a shell on that box, and then enter the following:

```
$ smbclient -L localhost
```

When prompted for a password, press Enter. This way you can quickly see if the new share you added is available. Of course, if you didn't make the share open to browsing, you'll need to log on as a user who can view that share using the `-U` option.

## Access Samba Resources with an FTP-Like Client

### **smbclient**

After you know the shares available on a Samba server, you can log in and start using them. Use the `smbclient` command, but in this format:

```
smbclient //server/share -U username
```

You can't just log in to a server; instead, you need to log in to a share on that server. To access password-protected items (and it's certainly advisable to password-protect your shares), you need to specify a user. To access the `documents` share on the server `ELIOT`, you'd use the following:

```
$ smbclient //eliot/documents -U scott
Password:
Domain=[ELIOT] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.0.14a-
Ubuntu]
smb: \>
```

You'll know you were successful because you'll be at the Samba prompt, which looks like `smb: \>`. Notice that you're prompted for a password. Assuming that the password for the `scott` user was `123456` (a very bad password, but this is just hypothetical), you could have entered this command instead, and you wouldn't be prompted for a password:

```
$ smbclient //eliot/documents -U scott%123456
```

This is a terrible idea, however, because anyone looking at either your `.bash_history` file (discussed in the "[View Your Command-Line History](#)" section in [Chapter 11](#), "[Your Shell](#)") or the list of running processes with `ps` (see "[View All Currently Running Processes](#)" in [Chapter 12](#), "[Monitoring System Resources](#)") could see your password. Never append your password onto your username. It's just good security practice to enter it when prompted.

### Tip

If you're writing a script and you need to log in without interaction, you still shouldn't append the password onto the username. Instead, use the `-A` (or `--authentication-file=[filename]`) option, which references a credentials file. Using the `scott` user, that file would contain the following:

```
username = scott
password = 123456
```

Make sure you use `chmod` (see [Chapter 7](#), "[Ownerships and Permissions](#)") to set the permissions on that file so it isn't readable by the world.

After you're connected to a Samba share, you can use many of the commands familiar to those who have ever used FTP on the command line (see [Table 16.1](#)).

**Table 16.1. Important `smbclient` Commands**

Command	Meaning
<code>cd</code>	Change directory
<code>exit</code>	Close the connection to

<code>get</code>	the Samba server
<code>help</code>	Copy the specified file to the local machine
<code>lcd</code>	Get help on commands
<code>ls</code>	Change the directory on the local machine
<code>mget</code>	List files in the working directory on the Samba server
<code>mkdir</code>	Copy all files matching a pattern to the local machine
<code>mput</code>	Create a new directory on the Samba server
<code>put</code>	Copy all files matching a pattern to the Samba server
<code>rm</code>	Copy the specified file to the Samba server
	Remove the specified file from the Samba server

You can view other commands by simply typing `help` after you've logged in to the Samba server, but [Table 16.1](#) contains the basics. When you're finished, simply type `exit`, and you log out of the server and are back on your own machine.

## Mount a Samba Filesystem

**smbmount**  
**smbumount**

It's cool that you can use `smbclient` to access Samba shares, but it's also a pain if you want to use a GUI, or if you want to do a lot of work on the share. In those cases, you should use `smbmount`, which mounts the Samba share to your local filesystem as though it was part of your hard drive. After it's mounted, you can open your favorite file manager and access files on the share easily, and you can even open programs such as word processors and open the files directly with a minimum of fuss.

To mount a Samba share on your filesystem, you must create a mount point onto which Linux will graft the share. For instance, if you were going to mount the `documents` share from `ELIOT`, you might create a directory like this:

```
$ mkdir /home/scott/eliot_documents
```

Now you run the `smbmount` command, along with a whole host of options.

```
[View full width]$ smbmount //eliot/documents /home/scott/eliot_documents -o credentials=/home/scott/bin/
/credentials_eliot,fmask=644,dmask=755,uid=1001,gid=1001,workgroup=TURING
smbmnt must be installed suid root for direct user mounts (1000,1000)
smbmnt failed: 1
```

Before looking at the option, let's talk about why `smbmount` failed. The second line tells you why: `smbmnt`, which `smbmount` calls, can only be run by root. This can be a problem if you want your non-root users to be able to mount Samba shares. The way around that is to set `smbmnt` as `suid root` (you learned about `suid` in [Chapter 7's "Set and Then Clear suid"](#)).

#### Note

Yes, you're giving ordinary users the ability to use `smbmnt` as though they were root, but it's not really a big problem. It's certainly better than giving them the root password, or requiring your participation every time they want to mount a Samba share.

Here's how to set `smbmnt` as `suid root`.

#### Note

In order to save space, some of the details you'd normally see with `ls -l` have been removed.

```
# ls /usr/bin/smbmnt
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root /usr/bin/smbmnt
# chmod u+s /usr/bin/smbmnt
# ls -l /usr/bin/smbmnt
-rwsr-xr-x 1 root root /usr/bin/smbmnt
```

Now let's try `smbmount` again.

```
[View full width]$ smbmount //eliot/documents /home/scott/eliot_documents -o redentials=/home/scott
/credentials_eliot,fmask=644,dmask=755,uid=1001,gid=1001,workgroup=TURING
```

```
$ ls -F /home/scott/eliot_documents
presentations/  to_print/
```

Let's walk through the command you used. After `smbmount`, `//eliot/documents` specifies the Samba server and share to which you're connecting. Then comes the path to your mount point, `/home/scott/eliot_documents`. The `-o` option indicates that options are coming next.

Instead of `credentials=/home/scott/credentials_eliot`, you could have used any of the following:

- `username=scott,password=123456`
- `username=scott%123456`
- `username=scott`

The first and second choices are completely unsafe because the password would now show up in `.bash_history` and `ps`. Don't do that! The final choice prompts you for a password, which would be safe because the password wouldn't appear in either `.bash_history` or `ps`. But you're trying to automate the process of mounting the Samba share, so the last choice wouldn't work, either.

That leaves you with `credentials=/home/scott/credentials_eliot`. This tells `smbmount` that the username and password are stored in a file, in this format:

```
username = scott
password = 123456
```

This is just like the credentials file discussed previously in "[Access Samba Resources with an FTP-Like Client](#)," and as an example, use `chmod` after you create a credentials file to tightly limit who can view that file. If you don't care about automating the logon process, by all means, use `username=scott` and get prompted to enter the password, which is certainly the safest option.

The `fmask` and `dmask` options respectively control the default permissions for any new files and directories that you create on the mounted Samba share. `644` would produce `rw-r--r--` for files, while `755` would end up with `rw-r-xr-x` for directories.

#### Note

Don't recall what we're talking about? Take a look back at "[Understand the Basics of Permissions](#)" in [Chapter 7](#).

Remember that all usernames and group names are really references to numbers, which you can see in `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group`, respectively. Your user ID number on your current machine might be 1000, but on the Samba server, 1000 could be a completely different user, with the same problem for your group ID. With `uid=1001` and `gid=1001`, you tell the Samba server who you are on the Samba server. In other words, you need to look those numbers up in `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group` on the Samba server, not on your local machine. If you don't, you may create files and directories, only to find that you don't really own them and can't use them the way you want.

Finally, `workgroup=TURING` specifies the workgroup, which is obvious enough.

After the share is mounted, you can open your file manager and start browsing the contents of `eliot_documents`, start OpenOffice.org and directly open a file inside `eliot_documents/presentations/`, or open a PDF in

`eliot_documents/to_print` and send it to the printer. If you place the following lines in your machine's `/etc/fstab` file, the share is mounted automatically.

```
[View full width]//eliot/documents /home/scott/eliot_documents smbfs credentials=/home/scott
/credentials_eliot, fmask=644, dmask=755, uid=1001, gid=1001, workgroup=TURING 0 0
```

### Caution

Be very careful changing your `/etc/fstab` file because mistakes can render your system unbootable. Sure, you can fix that problem (see my book *Hacking Knoppix* for some tips) but it's still a pain that would be better to avoid with caution and prudence. For more on the `fstab` file, see `man fstab` on your system.

If you decide that you don't want to access the Samba share at `eliot_documents` any longer, you can unmount it with `smbumount` (notice that's `umount`, not `unmount`).

```
$ smbmount eliot_documents
smbmount must be installed suid root
```

How frustrating! You need to set `smbmount` as `suid root`, too.

```
$ ls -l /usr/bin/smbmount
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root /usr/bin/smbmount
$ sudo chmod u+s /usr/bin/smbmount
$ ls -l /usr/bin/smbmount
-rwsr-xr-x 1 root root /usr/bin/smbmount
```

Now the user that mounted `eliot_documents` and only that user can unmount `eliot_documents`. Root can unmount it, too, because root can do whatever it wants.

```
$ smbmount eliot_documents
```

And that's it. If you want to verify that `smbmount` worked, try `ls eliot_documents`, and there shouldn't be anything in there. You're disconnected from that Samba share.

## Conclusion

Much as Linux users would like to pretend that Microsoft doesn't exist, you have to realize that (for now) you live in a Windows world. Samba makes coexistence that much easier because it allows Linux users to access resources on Windows machines, and even makes resources available on a Linux box to users of other operating systems. Microsoft might not like it very much, but Samba is a mature, stable, powerful technology, and thanks to its open-source nature, it has helped bring the entire world of computing more closely together. Samba helps you reduce the need for Windows servers in homes and businesses, and that, as a certain

doyenne might say, is a good thing.

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- ! (bang) 2nd
- \$( ) (command substitution)
- && (double ampersand)
- \* (asterisk) 2nd 3rd
- (dash)
- R (dash R) option to commands
- . (period)
- .so (shared object) file
- / (forward slash)
- " (quotation marks)
  - in regular expressions
  - single quotes (')
- : (colon)
- ; (semicolon)
- < > (angle brackets)
  - double right angle brackets
  - right angle brackets
- ? (question mark)
- [ ] (square brackets)
- \ (backslash)
- \_ (underscore)
- ` (backtick)
- { } (curly braces)
- | (pipe)
  - double pipe
  - text editors and
- ~ (tilde)

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

### alias

- permanent aliases
- removing aliases
- temporary aliases
- viewing specific command aliases

### angle brackets (< >)

- double right angle brackets
- right angle brackets

### apropos command

### apt utility

- apt configuration file
- apt-cache search command
- apt-get clean command
- apt-get install command
- apt-get remove command
- apt-get upgrade command
- Get and Ign
- sudo and
- troubleshooting

### archiving 2nd 3rd 4th

- bzip2 command
- gzip command

tar command [See tar command.]

- zip command

### asterisk (\*) 2nd 3rd

### ath0

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

### backslash (/)

### backtick (`)

### backups

- and secure transfer between hosts
- cp command, using

### bang (!) 2nd

### bash shell

### bunzip command

### bunzip2 command

### bzip2 command 2nd



# Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- case sensitivity, filenames
- cat command
- cd command
- chgrp command
- chmod command
  - R option
  - alphabetic notation
  - numeric notation
  - sgid, setting and clearing
  - sticky bit , setting and clearing
  - suid, setting and clearing
- chown command
- colon (:)
  - color-coded output, ls command
  - columnar output, ls command
  - comma-separated listing, ls command
- command documentation [See also info command, man command.]
  - apropos command
  - command defaults, identifying
  - manpages [See default printer, manpages.]
    - path, source files, and manpages, finding
    - searching
    - synopses
- commands
  - R options to
    - appending output to a file
    - canceling
  - command aliases [See alias.]
  - command stacking
  - command substitution
  - files, using for command input
  - output redirection 2nd
  - output, searching with grep
  - repeating commands
- Common Unix Printing System [See default printer, CUPS, canceling print jobs to.]
- compress command
- compressed files, testing for corruption 2nd
- concatenate
- cp command
  - creating backups using
  - directories, copying
  - interactive option
  - verbose option
  - wildcards, using
- Ctrl+c command
- CUPS (Common Unix Printing System) [See also files, printing.]

[CUPS Software Users Manual](#)  
[Linux Journal article](#)  
[URIs and](#)  
[curl command](#)  
[curly braces \({} \)](#)

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

[dashes \(-\)](#)  
[DEB packages](#)  
[default printer](#)  
[CUPS](#)

- [canceling print jobs to](#)
  - [determining](#)
  - [printing to](#)
- [job ID numbers](#)
- [Linux Journal overview](#)
- [lpstat, collecting system information with](#)
- [manpages](#)
- [print jobs](#)
  - [canceling all](#)
  - [listing](#)
  - [listing corresponding printers](#)
  - [multiple copies, printing](#)
  - [to any printer](#)
  - [to any printer, canceling](#)
  - [to default, canceling](#)
- [printer connections](#)
- [printer status, determining](#)

[deleting directories](#)  
[deleting files](#)

- [accidental deletes, preventing](#)
- [verbose option](#)
- [with special characters in the filename](#)
- [with wildcards](#)

[df command](#)  
[dhclient command](#)  
[DHCP \(Dynamic Host Control Protocol\)](#)  
[directories](#)

- [changing](#)
- [contents of, listing \[See \[ls command\]\(#\).\]](#)
- [copying](#)
- [creating new](#)
- [creating with included subdirectories](#)
- [current directory, determining](#)
- [deleting with contents](#)
- [disk space usage, totals only](#)

- empty, removing
- file space usage, monitoring
- moving and renaming
- ownerships [See [ownership of files.](#)]
- permissions [See [permissions.](#)]
- Directory node, info command
- disk usage, monitoring
- DNS (Domain Name System)
- dog command
- domains
- double ampersand (&&)
- double bang (!!)
- double pipe (||)
- double quotes in regular expressions
- double right angle brackets
- dpkg command
- du command
- Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP)

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- echo command
- encryption keys
- environment variables
- ESSID (Extended Service Set Identifier)
- eth0
- Ethernet cards 2nd
- executables, finding
- Expert Info, info command
- Extended Service Set Identifier (ESSID)

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- files
  - archiving [See [archiving.](#)]
  - command input, using for
  - compressing
  - copying
    - avoiding overwrites

- backups
- cat command and output redirection, using
- wildcards, using
- copying between hosts
- deleting
  - accidental deletes, preventing
  - special characters, handling
  - wildcards, using
- empty files, creating
- file attributes
- file descriptors
- file size, listing
- file type, displaying
- filenames
- finding [See [find command](#); ; [locate command](#).]
- hidden files, viewing
- listing [See [ls command](#).]
- moving
- open files, listing
- ownerships [See [ownership of files](#).]
- permission and type characters
- permissions [See [permissions](#).]
- printing
- renaming
- searching in [See [grep command](#).]
- secure network transfers
- secure transfer and backup between hosts
- time, changing on
- users of, listing
- viewing
  - beginning bytes
  - beginning lines
  - cat command, using
  - last ten lines
  - one screen at a time
  - repeated viewing, appended updates
- find command
  - a (AND) option
  - exec option
  - fprint option
  - n (NOT) option
  - o (OR) option
  - file type
  - name
  - ownership
  - size
- Flags
- forward slash (/)
- free command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- Gateways
- Genmasks
- GID (Group ID)
- grep command
  - R (recursive) option
  - case-insensitive option
  - limiting results to matched files
  - line numbers of results, showing
  - outputting lines near matched terms
  - outputting names of files containing matches
  - regular expressions
  - searching command output
  - searching for negative matches
  - searching text files for patterns
  - searching within results
  - versions of
    - whole words, limiting searches to
- Group ID (GID)
- gunzip command
- gzip command 2nd

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- head command
  - bytes option
  - multiple files, using with
  - number option
- hidden files, viewing
- history command
  - .bash history file, security concerns
  - repeating commands
  - repeating the last command
- home directory 2nd
- host command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- ICMP messages
- ifconfig command 2nd
  - MAC address spoofing
  - network configuration using
  - network inspection using
- ifdown command
- ifup command
- import command
- info command [See also [searching, command documentation.](#)]
  - Directory node
  - Expert Info
  - navigation
- input redirection
- input/output streams
- installing software [See [package management.](#)]
- IP addresses 2nd
- IPv4 and IPv6
- iwconfig command
  - connection encryption schemes
  - ESSID
  - WEP
  - wireless interface configuration
  - wireless interface status, checking
  - wireless network topologies

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

job ID numbers, printing

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

kill command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- left angle bracket (<)
- less command
- links, online resources concerning
- Linux distributions
- lo
- locate command
  - case-insensitive option
  - piping output to pagers
  - slocate and
  - updating the database
- log files, repeated viewing of appended updates
- loopback address
- lpq command
- lpr command
- lprm command
- lpstat command 2nd
- ls command
  - color-coded output
  - columnar output
  - comma-separated listing
  - directory contents, listing
  - file size output
  - file type, displaying
  - files, listing
  - hidden files and folders, viewing
  - listing ownership, permissions and size
  - long option
  - piping output to less
  - reverse-order output
  - sorting
- lsuf command
  - files, listing users of
  - piping to less
  - specific program processes, listing
  - users' open files

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- MAC (Media Access Control) addresses 2nd
- man command [See also [searching, command documentation.](#)]
  - [apropos option](#)
  - [displaying command synopses](#)
  - [manpage classification](#)
  - [manpage sections](#)
  - [manpage updates](#)
  - [printing output](#)
- man pages [See also [man command.](#)]
  - [command classifications](#)
  - [databases, rebuilds and updates](#)
  - [finding](#)
  - [printing out](#)
  - [whatis, accessing with](#)
- Master Browsers
- memory usage, monitoring
- mkdir command
- mtr command
- mv command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [[A](#)] [[B](#)] [[C](#)] [[D](#)] [[E](#)] [[F](#)] [[G](#)] [[H](#)] [[I](#)] [[J](#)] [[K](#)] [[L](#)] [[M](#)] [[N](#)] [[O](#)] [[P](#)] [[Q](#)] [[R](#)] [[S](#)] [[T](#)] [[U](#)] [[W](#)] [[Y](#)] [[Z](#)]

- [nameserver](#)
- [navigation, info command](#)
- [networking](#)
  - [activating a connection](#)
  - [deactivating a connection](#)
  - [DHCP](#)
  - [DNS](#)
  - [encryption](#)
  - [file downloads](#)
  - [IP addresses](#)
  - [IP routing tables](#)
- [network configuration](#) [See [ifconfig command.](#)]
  - [network topologies](#)
  - [networking devices](#)
  - [non-interactive website downloads](#)
  - [ping, checking connections with](#)
- [remote logins](#) [See [ssh command.](#)]
  - [routing tables, modifying](#)
  - [secure file copying between hosts](#)
  - [secure file transfer and backup](#)
  - [secure file transfers](#)
  - [sequential file downloads](#)
  - [troubleshooting](#)
- [wireless interfaces](#) [See [iwconfig command.](#)]
  - [with Windows machines](#) [See [Samba.](#)]



- nmbd
- nmblookup command
  - M option
  - S option
  - T option
  - finding file and print shares
  - Master Browsers, querying for
- noclobber option
- nodes
- numeric permissions

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- octal permissions
- output redirection
- ownership of files
  - changing
  - group owners, changing
  - listing

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- package management
  - Debian distributions
    - apt [See [apt utility.](#)]
    - downloadable packages, finding
    - handling dependencies [See [apt utility.](#)]
  - RPM-based distributions
    - handling dependencies [See [yum \(Yellow Dog Updater, Modified\), yum install command.](#)]
    - installing packages
    - removing packages
- paggers
- Parent Process ID (PPID) number
- paths
  - current directory path, displaying
  - finding
- period (.)
- permission characters
- permissions 2nd

- alphabetic notation, modifying with
  - file attributes, abbreviations for
  - listing
  - numeric notation
  - recursive application to files and directories
  - sticky bit, setting and clearing
  - suid, setting and clearing
- PID (process ID) number
- ping command
- pipe (|)
- PPID (Parent Process ID) number
- printing
  - command-line compatible formats
  - CUPS [See default printer, CUPS, canceling print jobs to.]
- process ID (PID) number
- process trees
- programs, non-pipable
- ps command
  - grep, using with
  - piping output to grep
  - process trees
  - STAT letters
  - user-owned processes
- ps2pdf command
- pump command
- pwd command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

question mark (?)  
 quotation marks (") 2nd

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

RAM usage, monitoring  
 redirection of output  
 regular expressions (regexp)  
 remote logins [See ssh command.]  
 renaming files and folders

- reverse-order output, `ls` command
- right angle bracket (`>`)
- `rm` command
  - interactive option
  - recursive force option
  - verbose option
  - wildcards and
- `rmdir` command
- `root`
- `route` command
- `rpm` command
- RPM packages
- `rsync` command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- Samba
  - domains
  - finding file and print shares
  - logging in to shares
  - Master Browsers, discovering
  - mounting a filesystem
  - Samba prompt
  - Samba shares, listing
  - server daemons
  - unmounting a filesystem
  - user and group names on the Samba server
  - Windows workgroups
- `scp` command
- screenshots
- searching
  - command documentation
  - for files [See also `locate` command.]
  - in files [See `grep` command.]
- security of remote logins [See `ssh` command.]
- semicolon (`:`)
- `sftp` command
- `sgid` 2nd
- shared object (`.so`) file
- single quotes
- `sleep` command
- `slocate` command 2nd
- SMB (Server Message Block) protocol
- `smbclient` command
  - `-A` option
  - `-U` option
  - listing Samba shares

- logging in to shares
- smbd
- smbmnt command, setting as suid root
- smbmount command
- smbumount command
- soft links, moving
- software installation [See [package management](#).]
- sorting ls command output
  - date and time
  - file extension
  - size
- source files, finding
- spaces
- special characters
  - in filenames
  - in regular expressions
- spoofing
- square brackets ([ ])
- ssh command
  - HashKnownHosts option
  - known hosts file
  - remote logins
    - OS reinstallations and
    - passwordless logins
- standard input, output, and error
- STAT letters
- stdin, stdout, and stderr
- sticky bit 2nd
- su command
  - login option
  - root, becoming
- subfolders, viewing contents of
- subnodes
- sudo command and apt utility
- suid 2nd
- Synaptic
- system monitoring
  - directory, usage of file space
    - totals only
  - file system disk usage
  - files, listing users of
  - killing processes
  - listing open files
  - listing users' open files
  - monitoring processes dynamically
  - process trees
  - program processes, listing
  - RAM usage, monitoring
  - user-owned processes
  - viewing running processes

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

tail command

- multiple files, using with

- number option

- repeated operation on changing files

tar command 2nd

- testing tarballs prior to untarring

- untarring and uncompressing tarballs

- using with compression utilities

text editors

tilde (~)

time, changing on files

top command

touch command

- empty files, creating with

- files, changing to arbitrary time

- files, updating to current time

traceroute command

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

UID (User ID)

unalias command

underscores (\_)

unzip command 2nd

updatedb command

URIs (Uniform Resource Indicators) and CUPS

User ID (UID)

users

- listing open files of

- switching

- user abbreviations

## Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [W] [Y] [Z]

- WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy)
- WEP Key Generator
- wget command
  - non-interactive file downloads
  - non-interactive website downloads
- whatis command
- whereis command
- which command
- Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
- wildcards
  - copying files
  - deleting files
  - directory contents, listing
  - regular expressions, compared to
- Windows networking [See [Samba](#).]
- Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP)
- wireless cards 2nd
- wireless networking
- workgroups
- WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)

## Index

[[SYMBOL](#)] [[A](#)] [[B](#)] [[C](#)] [[D](#)] [[E](#)] [[F](#)] [[G](#)] [[H](#)] [[I](#)] [[J](#)] [[K](#)] [[L](#)] [[M](#)] [[N](#)] [[O](#)] [[P](#)] [[Q](#)] [[R](#)] [[S](#)] [[T](#)] [[U](#)] [[W](#)] [[Y](#)] [[Z](#)]

- yum (Yellow Dog Updater, Modified) [See also [package management](#).]
  - yum install command 2nd
  - yum list available command
  - yum remove command
  - yum search command
  - yum update command